



VALENTINE AND ORSO N, The two Sons of the Emperour of GREECE.

Newly Corrected and Amended with new Pictures,
Lively expressing the.

HISTORY.



London, Printed by A. Purflow, for T. Passinger, at the Sign of the

VALENTINE
AND

ORSON

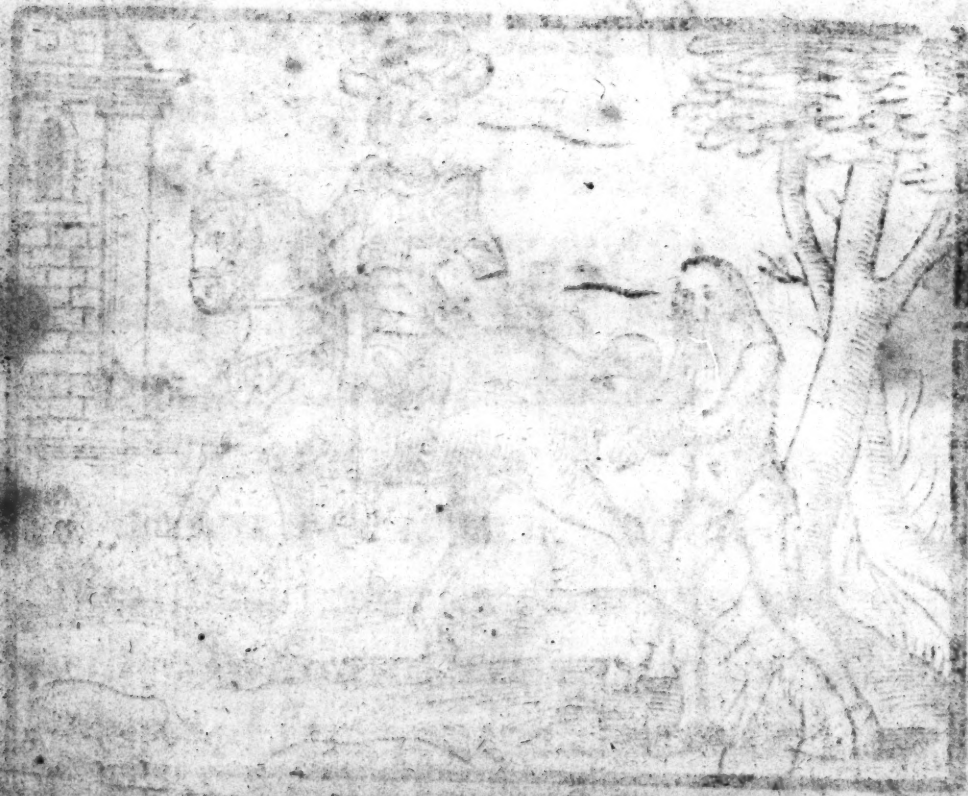
The two sons of the Emperor of

GERMANY


They were taken prisoner with a

large number of soldiers

by the Turks



The Printer to the Reader.

 Amongst many Histories, as well *Ancient* as *Modern*, which have in former times borrowed our *English* Phraise, to speak withal, this (gentle Reader) here of *Valentine* and *Orson*, Sons to the Emperour of *Greece*, now once again newly Imprinted, craves a free passage of thy acceptance, and puts it self to the censure of those Historiographers, which make *Invention* the Eldest Daughter of the *Seven Sciences*. Therefore considering with my self the worthiness of the Story, with the variety thereof, being many years ago first Written in *French*, and since Translated into *English*; where it hath found a favourable welcome, as well of Superiours as Inferiours: I have now again to my Cost and charge, published it to the eye and ear of such, to be seen or heard, as take pleasure in these kind of Writings. It is furnished with much state of Matter, Elegancy, and *Invention*, and decked forth with many fair *Models*, & lively

Pictures, all pertinent & agreeable to the subject of the History, which I have caused to be newly cut, not onely to make it carry the more grace in Reading, but a more lustre to *Heroick Atchievements* of *Knightly Adventures*: For here may the *Princely mind* see his own model; the *Knightly Tilter*, his *Martial Atchievements*; and the *amorous Lady*, her *dulcet passages of Love*: Here are *Countries*, with the *Courts of Kings* deciphered, the *magnitude of Honours* laid open, & the *true form of Turnaments* described, and between *Kt.* and *Kt.* are here *most lively Combats Portrayed*, to the great content of the Reader. Let no man therefore think his time ill spent, or his labour lost, where the matter affords such copiousness of *Pleasure*. The *History* for the *strangeness*, may well bear the title of *Courtly contents*, for indeed it is a *Garden of Courtly delights*, wherein grows *Flowers of an extraordinary favour*, that gives a *scent* in the bosoms of *nobility, Ladies, Kts. and Gentlemen*. It gives also a working to the minds of the

dull *Country Swains*, and as it were, leads them to search out for *Martial atchievements*, befitting many *pastimes*. Herein also is contained the true *difference* betwixt *Art* and *Nature*, for in *Valentine* is comprehended the *education of Art*, and in *Orson* the true *working of Nature*: for being both one *Emperours Sons*, the one of them brought up in a *Princes Palace*, the other among *savage beasts*, now makes the *current* pass with more admiration to the *Reader*: mark but the *carriaiage of wild Orson*, and you shall find that *Nature* hath a being above *Art*, but yet *nature* bettered by *art*, hath a more *noble working*. The *History* here *written* was translated out of *French*, into *English*, above 100 years ago, by one *Henry Watson*, and since that time, it hath been by him *corrected*, & put into a more *plyant Stile*, & so followed on to the *Press*, till this present *edition*, which I have (as you see) here published for thy benefit: therefore (*gentle Reader*) accept of this my *cost* and *pains*, who had rather prove *loser*, then so worthy a *Story* as this is,

Should lye in *obscurity*, for there are few *subjects* of *humane carriage*, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be seen into. If you desire to see the *cares and troubles of Kings*, here they are: If you desire to know the *Battels of martial Champions*, here they are: If of *Courtly Turnaments*, and *combats of Princes*, here they are: If of the *travels of Knightly Adventures*, here they are: If of the *sorrows of distressed Ladies*, here they are: if of *strange Births*, and *savage educations*, here they are, if of *friends long lost*, and of *their joyful meetings again*, here they are: If of *charms and enchantments*, here they are; If of the *reward of Traitors and Treasons*, here they are: If of *long captivities and imprisonments*, here they are: yea, here are all the *varieties and passages* that may furnish forth a *History* fit for a *Readers pleasure*, for no unseemly words or *speeches* are herein contained, but such as are modestly carried.

Considering all which, I am now encouraged to put this old Story into a new Livery, and not to suffer that to lye buried, that a little cost may keep alive.

And so Gentle Reader) craving thy kind acceptance, I wish thee much willingness to the Reading as I have been forward in the Printing: And

THE HISTORY OF Valentine & Orson.

CHAP. I.

How King Pepin banished his Queen Bertha: And how he gave his Sister Bellysant in Marriage to Alexander, Emperor of Constantinople.

And it credibly set down in ancient Chronicles, that the brave Poble and Valiant Pepin, sometimes a King of France, took to Wife one Bertha, who was descended of no less then Royal Race: This Lady was exceeding fair and wise, but wondrously cumbr'd with many aduersities, and troubles, embolden'd beset on every side: which with great patience she always suffered.

The chief Instrument of all this treacherous mischief toward this good Queen, was plotted and effected by a false and cursed old woman, who first of all brought her in disgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite banished his Bed, whilst she in cunning manner brought in a Daughter of her own unto the Kings Bed instead of his good Queen Bertha: This old woman having thus brought her treachery to effect (for her Daughter somewhat resembled Bertha) it so came to pass, that King Pepin had two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, Haufrey and Henry, both which Sons so grieved the King, and so tormented the Countrey of France by their outrages and fury, that in the end they caused the

Queen Bertha to be utterly banished, where she passed a great part of her days in doleful lamentation, and abundance of sorrow. She long endured those miserable days of sorrow, at the last began to receive comfort again: For it chanced after, at the earnest suit and request of divers great Peers and Lords of France, that this good Queen began to find favour again with King Pepin her husband (who when he knew the Treacher, that the wicked old woman had plotted against her) much bewailed the miseries she had endured, and with great honour and triumph received her again most kindly. The Queen being thus restored to her former bed, in short time conceived and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called Charlemain the puissant: But the King himself was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforesaid Haufrey and Henry, and at the last by them compelled to forsake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the ensuing History.

My purpose now at this present is, to set down unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Book: and especially, the valiant acts and deeds of Valentine and his Brother Orson.

This King Pepin had a Sister named Bellyfant, a woman of great wit, beauty, and all the endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her Brother Pepins love mightily to appear to all the world, in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced so, that the fame of this lovely personage spread it self so abroad in other Regions, that at last, King Alexander, Emperour of Constantinople, who was much enamoured with her beauty, came into France, accompanied with a gallant Troop of his Nobility, all richly set out with all manner of Pomp belonging to so great a personage.

This Emperour, shortly after his arrival, suddenly assembled all his Lords in their rich habiliments, appointing them to take their way towards King Pepins Court, to declare unto him the cause of his coming; which was to enjoy his fair Sister Bellyfant in Marriage. The Nobles, according to his command, came unto King Pepin, declaring unto him the cause of their Emperours coming into his Country: which when King Pepin understood, he joyfully entertained them, and granted quickly the Emperours request.

King Pepin understanding this sudden (but joyful) News, made great preparation in his Court, for the entertaining of this Noble Emperour; and caused all his Nobles and Attendants to go with him in great Pomp and Triumph, to meet this Noble Emperour. All things being in readines, King Pepin with all his Noble Train, went to meet Alexander Emperour of Constantino-ple: whom when they met, they entertained with great joy, and conducted him to the Court of France, where fair Bellysane was, and she entertained him with no lesa joy, then her Brother King Pepin had done before: and there they spent their time in great joy and Triumpling.

This Marriage being once publicly known among all the Inhabitants, joy began to shew forth it self on every side, for such a happy day, wherein such good Alliance was knit between the Emperour Alexander, and Pepin King of France; that Triumphs began in every place, against the Nuptial days appear-



ance. When the time appointed came, these two were espoused in all honour sitting for their Estates, and largeness shewed it self on every side. This Marriage Feast endured long, but at last being ended, the Emperour (assisted with all his worthy Train) made preparation to take their leave of King Pepin his Brother in Law, and take their way towards Constantinople, with his fair Empress Belysant. Being thus all mounted on Horse-back, King Pepin also set forward with his Brother Emperour, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on every side, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find legs to go, found eyes to weep for the departure of their fair Lady and Mistress, the new Empress of Constantinople.

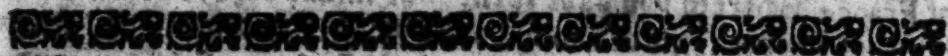
At last, both these mighty Princes came neer unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they must needs part; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more thanks in tears, then words, the which I am not able to express: But above all, the Emperour yielded King Pepin worthy thanks for his quick, sudden, and generous consent, in giving to him his fair Sister Belysant, and with so frank and free a heart to yield him his good will. At which words of the Emperour, unto King Pepin, the King presently embraced him in his arms; saying, Fair Sir, and my right loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your State required, nor with such Triumphs and Magnificence as became me: but in that you have so graciously accepted my small power, I hold my self content in that I have done, but not that I should have done: and therefore there belongeth small thanks to me, but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleased to accept of my Sister for your wife; whereby (I trust) long friendship shall be continued betwixt us; In token whereof, I take witness of all that are here present, that my Word, my Realm, my Goods, and all the powers that I can raise in France, to adventure for your safety and succour, all the days of my life.

King Pepin being now departed from the Emperour, turned himself to his Sister Belysant, and in this manner takes his leave: Fair Sister (quoth he) think no longer of this Countrey
of

of France, wherein you have spent your infant days, but remember that you are removed to a Country of better conditions. Also let your behaviour be such, that I, the rest of your Friends, and the whole company of all the Peers, may have honour and joy in you.

Again, as the Country where you now do go is strange unto you, so be you governed by the moost Ladies of the Land, and give no ear to wicked counsel, or to such as would move you to disloyalty; For you are the Creature that I have always dearest loved in all the world; wherefore, if I should hear tidings other then good from you, or of you, it would be the only cause to take away my life. After this he gave unto his Sister many worthy gifts, and so embracing and kissing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Slaves. The young Lady, whose heart being overcharged betwixt joy and fear, was not able to answer a word, and what with tears, and sighs, the passage of her tongue was utterly stopt. When all the Lords and Ladies took their leave each of other, at which was set fall many a brinish tear, as well on their parts of France, as they also that were to go for Constantinople, but especially for the departure of the fair Lady Bellyfant.

All duties of love being ended, King Bepin returned into France, and the Emperour by this time indurten on the Seas, had wind and water at such will and pleasure, that within short space, he with all his Train arrived with safety at Constantinople: where at their landing they were all received with great Joy, Honour, and Triumph; all which here were needless to recount. But mark what hapned; not long after these joye and Triumphs were clean extinguished, that were made for the Lady Bellyfant, in place thereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations, and tears were placed, And all for the said poor Lady, which by treason and false accusations, was cast out and banished, as hereafter more at large you shall perceive.



CHAP. II.

How the Arch-priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Master in making love to fair Bellyfant the Empress, and what evil followed thereupon.

In Constantinople lived an Arch-Priest, in whom the Emperor put such trust, and loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great Riches and Possessions, and committed all his bosom-thoughts unto his Secrecy: And in the end made him sole Governour and Commander over all his house; as also, he was the Emperors Principal Confessor, and one of his greatest Counsellors; for the which, he afterwards had many a sorrowful heart.

This Bishop, forgetting all the Emperors favours, and great honours done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the beauty of the new Empress, which excelled all mortal creatures, inordinate lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way, save only fit time and opportunity, to settle this his determination: At last it chanced on a day, that he espied her all alone, sitting solitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch-Priest well observing, he came into the Chamber likewise, and sat down by her: At last he began to behold her with a smiling and smiling countenance, of all which (the Lady mistrusted nothing) for that he very well remembered his greatness with the Emperor, and his familiarity in the house, and the never so much as once dreaming or thinking such an evil thought, as that he thereby would colour so foul and filthy an Act, as to motion her to dishonour, especially towards the Emperor his worthy Lord and Master, who so dearly esteemed of him, and so much affected him: But there is never more danger like to ensue, then when one of the same house intendeth Treason. But at the last, after many gestures of impurity, any sitting still by this worthy and vertuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious thoughts on this manner.

Right

Right dear and Sovereign Lady (quoth he) I am your Ser-
vant and Chaplain; therefore I beseech you not to stop your ears,
but rather let them wide open to hear my rude words; especially,
for that I am burnt up in affection towards your fair person, and
for whose love I have suffered intolerable torments in my fiery
bosom. Know therefore (my redoubted Lady) that the beauty
of your admirable person, and the supernal form wherein you
are framed and composed, hath even ravished my Spirits, broken
my heart, split my whole senses in sunder, and quite bereft me of
all rest, both by night and day; and onely with doting upon your
peerless beauty. Again (fair Lady) my Heart, Drink, Manners,
yea, and my very countenance, they all plead at the Bar of your
fair face, and resplendent Countenance; Insomuch, that onely
my request, and prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they
would so enchant that heart of yours, that you would at length
give consent unto me your vassal, that I might not onely serve
you, but also delight you in all those pleasures you are ordained
unto. If, Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying these
my uncessless thoughts (than which nothing will sooner cut my
heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present death, and ra-
ther covet therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than receive a
denial from those your fair lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are re-
nowned in all the gifts of Nature: Fair, Amiable, Counteous,
Gentle, and also Pious, be not then the cause that I should
determine my life, by losing your love; but rather grant what I
desire, and thereby make me for ever yours in hearty affection:
But, Lady, happily you will urge, how dare you to offend the
Gods in this unlawful act? To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am
one of the Vicars of the Gods upon earth, and therefore it wholly
rests in my power, to absolve you from your sin; and impose you
Penance; which trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very eas-
ie, so you grant me love.

These speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, on foot
a grave and prudent carriage, made unto this perjur'd Priest this
excellent reprehension and answer. Ah, thou false, unjust, villainous,
and Deceitful Priest, stain to all thy profession: How dar'st
thou once open thy perjured mouth to such a mass of villanies as
there.

thereon may eniue: First, as I said, against the sacred order; secondly, but most principally, against the Majesty of that Emperour, that hath reuerentised thee in the bond of tender compassion and love, and hath raised thee to great Dignities, far unfit for such a Devil incarnate: And from whom may justly proceed the sentence of condemnation, both on thee and me, if he should but understand thy insubornous and wicked practises. Thou (I say) Devil, and worse than Devil) thou that shouldst be unto me instruction, and also a guide to my life and conversation, in this thou goest about my utter ruine and destruction, by thy evil conditions, even beyond that good expectation which the Emperour trusteth to be in thee: I never grant (O ye Gods) that the blood of France, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperour my loving Lord, should be so dishonoured either by me in my body, or through my privacy in any other manner: O false accursed man, behold whereunto thou wouldst deliver me: First, unto the utter ruine and spoil of mine honour: next, that up my body in unremovable shame for ever, amongst men; and lastly, bring my soul into the jaws of Death and the Devil. Let fall, I say, all these thy vile and devilish prophecies to lust, and leade for ever hereafter to sollicit me, or any other vertuous creature on this manner, which if thou further prosecute unto me, then canst thou look for nothing but a shameful dolourful, and a most damnable death. Therefore with this answer depart, and see that ye attempt me no more.

His angry farewell of the worthy Champions, stung the Priell at the very heart, but at that time durst make no further reply unto the false Lady concerning love, but as a man all composed of rage and great fury, he then departed, discontent at this his most unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the last, when he could no longer hold he excused himself unto the Lady, craving pardon for these his both slanders and both follies committed, but yet could find no remedy to restore his honour. Thus being sore troubled in mind others and sundry ways, he resolved what to do upon revenge against this innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treason against the Lady. And thus seeing the Emperour knew nothing in this matter from the Champions Bellyfance, how the Arch-Priest would have incited her to dishonour, and would have devoured her

her to disloyalty to the Emperoz, but he could not, therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperoz for diuers crimes, as here after more at large followeth to be spoken in this next ensuing Chapter.



CHAP. III.

How the Arch-Priest having received this repulse at the hands of Bellyfant, to save his own honour, practised Treason against the innocent Lady.

THe Arch-Priest having now begun to set abroach his Devilish practises, began to bethink him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the reputation of his former Honours which the Emperoz had bestowed upon him: whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly under the cloak of dissimulation bear fair weather towards the Emperoz, as also seemed to shew how great care he had of his preservation and to make known his Loyalty and watchful care that he ever had towards the welfare of his Estate & Person. So it befel, that on a day when he espied a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperoz all alone, he began to break with him on this manner, as followeth:

Right High and Mighty Emperoz, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount and highly esteem of the many and innumerable labours, and great kindness which I have always received from your Mighty Highness: wherefore as duty doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the passages of your estate, in which I now stand by you appointed: But especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all other: therefore it is my duty, to bewray unto you all those carriages that any way concern your High and Mighty Person: wherefore I beseech your Highness to give ear to that which I shall now disclose un-

to you, for I had rather suffer all the torments of death, than for to
 give any thing from you: and the rather, for that it nearly touch-
 eth your person, profit, and honour. O Emperor, thus it is, Belly-
 fant your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she whom you
 have advanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the Duty and
 Loyalty which she oweth unto her dread Lord: for she wandreth in
 her love, giveth it unto another, which is proper only to your self.
 To name the person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know
 I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the blood of any man: but
 yet know for certain, that by the way of confession I came unto
 the light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will betray the
 name of him that thus usurps your Bed: but let it suffice, there is
 not a more unclean and sacrilegious woman liveth in your Court or
 Kingdom, whereby your life is in danger, your honour defamed,
 and my duty towards you approbated by what I have told you. My
 advice therefore is, to be wary of your person, and correct this
 her folly, but yet mildly and wisely, always with the preserva-
 tion of your Honor. For will it not be a great shame among the
 Princes of the Earth, that you, having taken a Wife, Sister to
 a great King one who for her beauty is incomparable, her noble-
 nesses and wisdom not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and
 she to prove a Whore? and what worse is, one who daily desireth
 your death, which grieves my heart to think upon.

The Emperor having heard this long Accusation, little mis-
 trusted the treachery of this Arch-Priest, but gave credit to all
 his tale, but false words: and therewithal became extreme pen-
 sive and sad: that his fault in her beauteous Love, had been thus
 discovered. He sat, having many days in many places uttered
 forth many discontented gestures, words, and sighs, and many
 grievous exclamations, even in the Imperial Palace, he gave
 rest a while unto his discontented Passions: but awakened Re-
 venge to wait upon fitter opportunity. And upon a day enter-
 ing into the Chamber of his late Lady Bellyfant, without speak-
 ing any words to her at all, in most fierce, rude, and unman-
 ly order, took his Lady by the head, and pulling her by the hair,
 he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground
 in such a horrid manner, that the blood besmeared all her face in
 most

most inhumane sort. The Lady receiving from her Lords such unlookt for welcom, cried out in lamentable manner, and as well as she was able began to say : Alas (my dear Lord) what misseth you to this unwelcome out-rage ? I call all the Gods to witness, I never did any thing in my life, either against your honour or life, or ever prostituted my body to any Strangers love. The Emperour not being thus satisfied, replied, saying : Thou whore, I am too well informed of thy proceedings, and cursed be the day and hour that ever I saw thy deceivable face, and therewithal, without all pittie dashed her head against the ground leaving her speechless, insomuch that all the Damoisels, her attendants, thought she had been quite bereft of life. Upon this, there arose up in the Court a most pitiful out-cry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance ; at which disaster all amazed, some ran to take up the dead body of the Empress, others took upon them to speak unto the Emperour, thinking thereby to stay the fury of this undescribed rage, whose words unto him were as followeth.

Alas (O great Sovereign) what may be the cause of this your sudden passion in delibering unto danger of death, this so modest, chaste and noble a Lady : A Lady so beloved of all degrees, and in whom was never seen the least spark of dishonour, neither towards you nor any within this Empire : wherefore our request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceived anger against this harmless Lady. The Emperour nothing for all this relenting, answered, Speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear, how cunningly she hath deluded me : therefore move me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to death, and he or they who shall hereunto gain-say, I shall make him partaker (in death) with this wicked and disloyal Strumpet.

These words were no sooner uttered, but up arose a worthy, valiant, and courageous bold Baron, and spake unto the Emperour after this manner: Right worthy Sir, I could wish you to be well advised before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused wife. After to a great King, namely Pepin, King of France, who when he shall hear of this wrong done to her, will out of a

couragious heart and a Brotherly affection, muster up all his men of War, and suddenly surprize our Towns, Houses, Villages, and Childzen, forgetting Mercie, and onely pursuing rebenge upon us, for these Merciles and cruel Deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other side, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous so rudely to smite and wound her on this manner, wherein you have proceeded against her. The worthy Baron having thus ended his advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperour, and in tears very submissively and lamentably, thus she spake:

Alas (my Lord) take pittie on an innocent Lady, for I am so free from any evil act, as I never so much as thought any evil against your person, or dignity: at least my Lord, if your compassion be quite distinct from pittying me, yet pittie the fruit of my body, for I am great with child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful delivery. If nothing can appease your anger towards me, then let my body be imprisoned in some strong Towler, till the time of my delivery, and then do with my body what pleaseeth you, so the fruit of my body may be kept safe. In this dolorous passion she proceeded so far, that what with her sighs and tears following one the other, it would have grieved the fieriest heart that ever rested in the bosom of the vilest Tyrant that ever reigned.

All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperour, who was so wholly bewitched with the false and traiterous accusation of the Arch-Bishop, that all lenity set apart, he burst out in this manner: Thou false Strumpet, the Child thou goest withal is to me no joy, but rather great dishonour, for thy behaviour and thy disloyalty hath made such a separation between us, that noting thy discolate life, thou hast made another partner in my love: The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the rage of the Emperour, by a common consent removed her out of his presence into another Chamber, shewing unto her all the favour they could both in action and gesture, although her fair face was sore deformed and besmeared with blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were Attendants, fetched water to wash her face, and did all they could, to revive her ever-dying Spirits.

Being

Being thus in another chamber, in comes Blandiman her Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured manner, for very pittie the water trickled down his cheeks, & at the last he began his speech in this manner.

Oh Adam, I plainly see that you are trayterously handled, and wish that the Gods would throw down their malignant curses upon that person that hath thus purchased your extreame miseries; But gentle Lady, take comfort unto you, and trust me, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again into France toward your Brother King Pepin, who gave me and my service unto you, to attend you in all these misfortunes, all which I will to the utmost of my power undertake, Sweet Lady, follow my counsel and free your self out of danger, for be you assured, that if here you stay, the Emperour will prosecute revenge upon you, and in the end bring you unto a shameful death.

Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this reply, Oh Blandiman, I know thy faithful service towards me, but yet, if I should follow thy advice, & steal out of this Country secretly, it would argue me guilty of all that infamy the Emperour throweth upon me, and thereby yeild me guilty of the deed: Believe me Servant, I had rather dye all the deaths the world can lay upon me, rather than to bear the blame of that wherein I am innocent.

By this time the Emperours Choller was somewhat pacified, by means of his Lords and Barons that attended, insomuch that he caused Bellysant to be quickly brought before him. When she was come, his heart trembled and fretted, for very anger, that he durst not put her to death, fearing the puissance and might of her Brother King Pepin, and therefore brast out into these speeches: Thou false and accursed Woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in question: I take the Gods to witness, were it not for thy Brothers sake, the valiant Pepin King of France I would make thee fry in the fire, as an example to all fair Ladies: but for his sake I spare thy life, stand forth and hear thy judgement, I banish thee out of my Country and Empire, expressly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou shalt eber be seen here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer death in all extremity: Also, I straightly,

straightly commanded that none of my Country dare be once so
 hardy, as to give aid, or accompany you, save onely your servant
 Blandiman, whom you brought with you out of France. So, get
 thee presently out of my sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in
 my bosome. The Emperour, having pronounced sentence against
 her, the Emperess Belysant, accompanied with her servant Blandi-
 man, speedily hasted to horse. Being thus mounted, and then
 passing through this fair City towards one of the gates thereof,
 there met her people in great multitudes, of all degrees, much
 lamenting the loss of so fair a Lady, and so lovely an Emperess.
 When she came to the utmost part, even ready to go out of the
 gates of the City, there was heard such a lamentable howling
 of mournful voices, that the like was never heard in the City
 of Constantinople. When she was out of the walls of the City,
 and but newly entered into the wide fields, she began to fall in-
 to a womanly fit of bitter weeping, to see how shamefully and dis-
 honourably she was handled, causeless. Again, to think upon her
 birth, and the imperial dignity from whence she was fallen, as
 also to account the misfortune wherein she was like to finish the
 rest of her days, it o'came her at last from tears, to utter her griefs
 in these words: Alas, in what unhappie hour was I born, to fall
 from so high estate, to so low an object of poverty as I am now
 in: Woe is me, the unhappiest among women: now are all my
 joys turned to sorrow, my laughter is turned into weeping,
 my songs converted into sighs: instead of cloath of Gold, where-
 with I was wont to be cloathed, now I am glad of all manner
 of mean attire: my precious Stones of inestimable value, are
 all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears stand o'er all my
 garments. O you fields and woods, to you I make my moan,
 for other company I have none, consider my exile, and help
 to bewail my misfortune: O would the Gods had pittied my
 distress, and made me the poorest among Creatures, then had
 not fortune given me so foul a fall, at least my poor estate
 would never have grieved me. Wherefore doth the beauteous
 Sun send forth his beams upon a wretch so miserable? Why
 doth the earth bear such a Creature, that is all composed of cala-
 mities: It is not possible for my Tongue to tell out my hearts
 sorrow.

lozrom. O wretched man (whatsoever thou art) that by thy wicked treason hath brought me to this downfall, I may well curse thee with bitterness of heart, for by thee onely am I made thus unfortunate. Ah, my Brother, what shouldest thou do with such a woful weight to thy Sister? It had been better I had never been born, than that I should prove such a stain to thy Kingly house. As she was thus complaining to her secret heart, the anguish thereof struck her into a swoond, as she sat on horse-back, and was ready at that instant to have fallen off her horse, ere her servant could alight and recover her, but he used all the speediest means for her recovery, at last she coming unto her self again, he said unto her: Alas Madam, be not so discomfited, neither let despair so far seize upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will keep and defend you, for they are ready to aid and assist the innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddainly spied a fountain, towards the which he and his Lady took their way, and being come near thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her long overtoyled senses. Here at this spring leade we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous Arch-Bishop who was the cause of all these treacherous and evil practises.



CHAP. IV.

Now the Arch-priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress

The Arch-Bishop having now brought the banishment of late Bellyfant, thought with himself now he should easily accomplish his desire: wherefore in all haste he changed his white Rocket into a Colours Sirel, and began unto his ride, and being thus equipped, he suddenly was mounted upon a white Sirel, the fairest that could be had in all Constantinople. Being thus mounted, he made after with all expedition, inquiring of all he met, which way the Lady Bellyfant

was taken, who gladly told him which way she lately passed. After some few hours riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest, and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady: It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her Servant Blandiman, sitting by a Fountain, but suddenly withdrew himself, and coming nearer, found the Lady sitting by the same, full of heaviness, lamenting her miserable fortunes, and by her sat her trusty Servant comforting her.

This false Priest, from forth his Beader, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reason of his disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-Priest, her Enemy: but coming nearer her, she soon discerned him, and being struck with a sudden fear, spake thus to her Servant: Alas (quoth she) I well perceive this to be the false Arch-Priest, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he be come to do me further villainy. Lady (quoth Blandiman) banish fear, for if he come after us to do you further harm, I will encounter him body for body, even as long as life lasteth. By this time that they had ended their speech each to other, the Arch-Priest was ready to alight from his Horse, to salute the Lady in all courteous behaviour: and after he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this manner:

Right dear Lady, and our late honored Empress, Altho thy case is so pitiful, as to suffer banishment by Sentence given against thee by the Emperour, so it is, that if thou wilt give me entertainment in thy Love, accept me into thy favour, and to grant what I have long sought at thy hands, I will bring it to pass that the Emperour shall again recal thy banishment, and make thy greatness of State, shine more bright then ever before: therefore advise you well, for I protest what I offer to you, is only tending to your good and advancement. Ha (quoth the Lady) thou disloyal and traiterous aduersary, I have no great cause to bestow love, where my life hath been put in jeopardy. It is onely thou that hast wrought my overthrow, & thou it is, that makest me to spend the remnant of my days in more misery then ever Lady is able to indure. Lady (quoth he) utter not forth such curses against me

me, for I am come to you, not to vex or trouble you, but to reap upon you more sores than ever you as yet, in all your life enjoyed; and in speaking these words he bended his body to the Lady, thinking to have kissed her, but Blandiman perceiving his intent, suddenly started between them, and gave the Arch-Priest so mighty a stroke that he felled him to the earth, and with the violence of the blow, brake out one of his teeth. The Arch-Priest had no sooner recovered himself from the ground, but suddenly betook him to his sword, which Blandiman perceiving, betook him to a blade which he had about him, whereupon grew a sore and dangerous fight between them.

This encounter lasted so long that they were both wounded, but still they continued fighting, till at last it chanced, a Merchant came by that way, who perceiving a far off their fierce encounter, cryed out with a loud voice, in this manner: Lords, Lords, quoth he, leave off, and shew the cause of this your variance, and I shall do my best to end this controversy. Sir, (quoth Blandiman) let us first try our right by our weapons, and afterwards we will be ruled by words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear silence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth. Alas (quoth she) as you ever pittied women, pity my case; for this man, whom here you see armed, is the false and traiterous Arch-Priest, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honor, and force me to his wicked and unsatiate Lust: Alas, this is he that hath made a separation between me and the Emperor my Lord and Husband. The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pittied her misery, and began thus unto the Arch-Priest, Sir Priest, leave off your enterprise, and dare not so much as to touch this innocent Lady, for if the Emperor did but understand this villany, he would soon end thy life in infamy, as thou well deservest. As soon as the Arch-Priest had heard his speech he forsook his combat, and fled as fast as he could through the wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his purpose toward the Lady: though he conveyed his body out of sight, yet his villanies were afterwards disclosed. After his departure the Lady was forced to stay still in the wood all sorrowful, with her wounded servant. The Merchant staid with them some little time, bewailing the hard hap of the
D
Lady;

Lady; yet comforted her, saying: Alas Lady! I see that his Arch-
 Priest hath falsely betrayed you, and brought you in hatred with
 the Emperour; but I will promise you, that if I live I will betray
 all these Treacheres to the Emperour, and bring the Traitors to a
 shameful death, and so taking leave, I commend you to the Gods,
 wishing that in these extremities you would be patient, and com-
 fort your self in these your sorrows: so with many thanks for his
 aid from Blandiman, the Merchant departed.

The Merchant having left them, Blandiman set the Lady upon
 her horse, and himself on his, so riding on together they came unto
 a lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight days, dur-
 ing which time her servant was recovered of his wounds, and
 then forward towards France, the Lady still sorrowful and com-
 plaining in this manner: Alas Blandiman, what may my Brother,
 and the Peers of France think of this, when they shall understand
 that I am expelled Greece for such a dishonourable deed, and as a
 common Harlot, banished from the Emperour of Constantinople?
 Alas! I am perswaded that the King my Brother will easily en-
 tertain it, that I am guilty of the deed, and in his anger care not to
 deliver me over to death. Lad (quoth he) be not thus discouraged,
 but trust in the Gods, who will revenge your injury, and pay it
 home upon the offenders head. During the time of these discomfets,
 they had passed many Countries and regions, till at last they came
 into France, and passing by Orleance, they took their way towards
 Paris, where King Pepin was accustomed to sojourn. So entering
 into a Forrest near unto Orleance, their happened new miseries
 unto this Empress, of which more hereafter ensueth.

CHAP. V.
 How Bellyfant in her banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons
 in the Wood, whose Names were Valentine and
 Orson, and how she lost them.

Bellyfant (as before you heard) being with Child, was sudden-
 ly overtaken in the Forrest. The time of her delivery being
 come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and begin to complain to
 her servant, on this manner. Alas (quoth she) help, help, I say,
 to

to lay me down softly under yonder great Tree, and when I am laid, make hast and find me the help of women, wheresoeber thou canst get any, for I can go no further my pains so much increase in multitudes upon me.

Blandiman her serbant did as he commanded, and for that he knew not how to find the same place again, he set a special mark, that he might the readier come thither again: and so betaking him to horse, he rode forth swiftly to seek some woman to help this distressed Lady.

He being gone, the Lady was left comfortles all alone without succour of any creature, so that at last she was deliuered of two fair Sons in the Desolate Forrest. These Children were no looner come into the world, but a fresh misery woyle than all the



rest that she had endured, happened to this Lady, for as she lay upon the earth under the Tree, and her two infants by her, sudden y came to her a huge Bear, most terrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her mouth, and with great pace hastened into the thickest of the Forrest. This strange and unlookt for accident, frightened the distressed Lady to the soul, that she cryed out most lamentably, getting up upon her hands and feet, to hasten after the aforesaid Bear, which was quickly got out of her sight. But alas! it little availed her to make any further pursuit, for she never came unto the sight of her child, till by miracle it was at length disclosed. So long wandered this Lady up and down, and from place to place, weeping and crying out for her child, that being over-wearied with travel, she fell into a great slumber, in such manner, that at the last she was thereby near deprived of her life, so that at the last she fell into a swoon upon the cold earth, as if she had yielded up the Ghost. In this extasse, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which she left under the Tree.

It hapned the same day that her Brother King Pepin had taken his journey from Paris (accompanied with divers great Lords and Barons) towards Constantinople, to visit his Sister Belysant, and striking through Orleans, he made such hast, that he entered into the same Forrest whereas his banished Sister was lately delivered of her two Children, but knowing nothing what had happened. Now as the King passed through this Forrest, he elyped lying under a Tree alone, the other Son of Belysant, which when he saw, he said unto his Attendants: My Lords, by the appointment of the Gods, see I have here found a fair encounter, even a Child. By the Gods (said the Lords) you say truth. Why, said the King, take it up, and it shall be brought up at my charge so long as it liveth, and it shall want no manner of attendance, but be used as it were mine own. For if it lides until it comes to mans estate, I will endow it with Lands and Possessions after the noblest manner: and therewithal calling unto him one of his Squires, gave him the whole charge thereof, saying to him on this manner: Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to Orleans, see it Baptized provide a good Nurse for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto: the King little suspecting that this Child was his Nephew.

The Esquire did as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleans, caused it to be baptized, and gave it his own name, called Valentine. After, he sought out a Nurse for the Child, and gave it great attendance, according to the Kings Command. This done, the King proceeded on his journey toward Constantinople, to see his lovely and beautiful Sister Belysant, but ere he could pass through the Forrest, he chanced to meet with Blandimarian accompanied with a woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greatest extremity of Child-birth. Blandimarian espied the King, he told him, and suddenly alighted from his Horse, doing his duty unto him. The King perceiving it to be Blandimarian, asked what good news from Constantinople, and abode the rest, how doth our Sister Belysant? Blandimarian answered: Most gracious Sovereign, I bring you but little tidings, yet those I bring are bitter and sharp: For (amongst the rest) I must tell you strange news of our loving Sister, and how she fares: wherefore so it is, That by force of Treason, and false suggestion of the cursed Arch-Bishop of Constantinople, your Sister is banished out of the Emperors Court, and Dominions, and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperors Court, and others, she had been publicly put to death, and burnt to ashes, in the sight of all the people.

King Pepin having heard the lamentable relation of Blandimarians report, being exceeding outrageous and fierce in anger (and yet sorrowful withal) brake out in speech most bitterly against her, on this manner: Now by the Gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperor no upright Judge, in that he spared the life of my Sister: for I swear, that if I had her here now in my possession, I would not rest, till by death I had made her an example for all false Ladies, while the world endureth: and therewithal commanded all his train of Lords, and others, to stay their journey of going forthward, and make their return back again to Paris: for the grievous offences of my Sister, here stays my journey, and so he departed without further asking any more questions, but turning his horses head, sorrow overcame his courage, and at last made him break forth into these words: Ha (quoth he) how many men are deceived in Women? Now am I utterly prevented of all my purposes,

purposes, for my only hope rested in the modesty of my Sister Bellysant, and in her stood all my joys and pleasure. Again, to have had the Emperour Alexander still my Brother, and fast friend at all affairs, and in all my necessities, was my only hope, and joy of heart, and now behold by her I am disappointed, defamed, and shut out into eternal dishonour. And so in that distrust and melancholly, King Pepin returned again towards Orleans. When Blandiman perceived the courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durst relate no further news of the Lady Bellysant, but leaving the King, took his way towards the Tree, where he lately left her in great pain of Child-birth: being come thither, he sought her every where, but could hear no tidings of her: wherefore being sorrowful, he knew not what way to take.

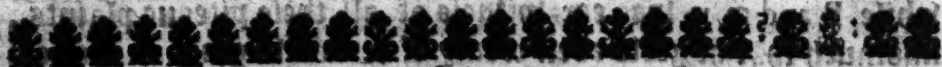
Being in this extasie, at last he tyed up his horse to a thorn-tree, and began again to make a narrower search than before; wherein he was so vigilant, that anon he espied her, finding her flat upon the earth, in a manner speechless, for very grief of heart that she had lost her Child, which the Bear had violently bore away from her. Blandiman being glad, that now at last he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his arms from the cold earth, set her upon her feet, and began thus unto her: Alas, (dear Lady and Mistress) how happened you to stray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a ghastly countenance, replied thus: Ah Blandiman! my dolours and distresses daily increase upon me. For thou wast no sooner departed, to get me the help of some woman-kind, but I being delivered of two Babes, a Ravenous Bear from the Forrest assailed me, and bare away one of them. I, although weak, making what poor shift I was able, followed that ravenous Beast, thinking by strong hand to have recovered again my loss, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor wanting my strength, recover back again to the Tree, where I left my other Infant. Lady (quoth he) the other Infant? why I my self but lately came from the Tree, and I am well assured that there lay no Infant there, nor near thereabout. Hold (quoth the Lady) no Child under the Tree? With these words she was so inwardly wounded, that she fell down in

a wound, which Blandiman espying, saved her (in what he could) and fell into bryntish tears for grief and sorrow, to see his Lady so extreame'y plunged and overwhelmed, and at last led her towards the Tree, where she had left the Child, but when she saw that other Child also gone, think then what dolour of heart the poor Lady endured: in the midst of all which sorrows, she thus bespeak.

Alas (quoth she) can there be in the world a more desolate wretch; on every side compassed with grief, yea, and all insupportable sorrows: but alas Emperoz, thou art the cause, and hast been the only means euen to deliver me euen to death, and that wrongfully without cause on my part, and only by deceitfull counsel hast thou bereft me of thy company: But here I call all the Gods to witness that I was never faulty to thee in my body, nor disobedient unto thee in any point: wherefore once again I am forced to cry out for vengeance upon the offenders head: whosoever. First, for my disgrace; next, for my banishment; and now lastly for the loss of my two Babes, issued from the blood Royal of the Emperoz of Constantinople. But seeing all these miseries have euen tryed themselves upon my very heart, Come death, and finish what sorrows do but prolong. All this while Blandiman was ear-witness of all these piteous plaints, insomuch that he grew euen weary of her wailing, and in the best manner he could, comforted her dying spirits, by falling to intreat her, that she would somewhat give over her moans, and bestake her self to her feet: Whereunto she gave consent, he accompanied with a Woman he had brought with him, came into a Neighbouring Village, whereas they lodged and nourished her, till she had something recovered her strength, and in some measure forgotten the depth of her miseries. Blandiman began to break with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in looking you in the woods, to light upon your Brother, King Pepin, who demanded of me what tidings? But his brows were bent and full of anger against you: wherefore Lady, my counsel is, that you make not towards him; for by that countenance I well perceive you shall have but slender welcome. For upon further questions demanded, and answered, so soon as he heard me tell that

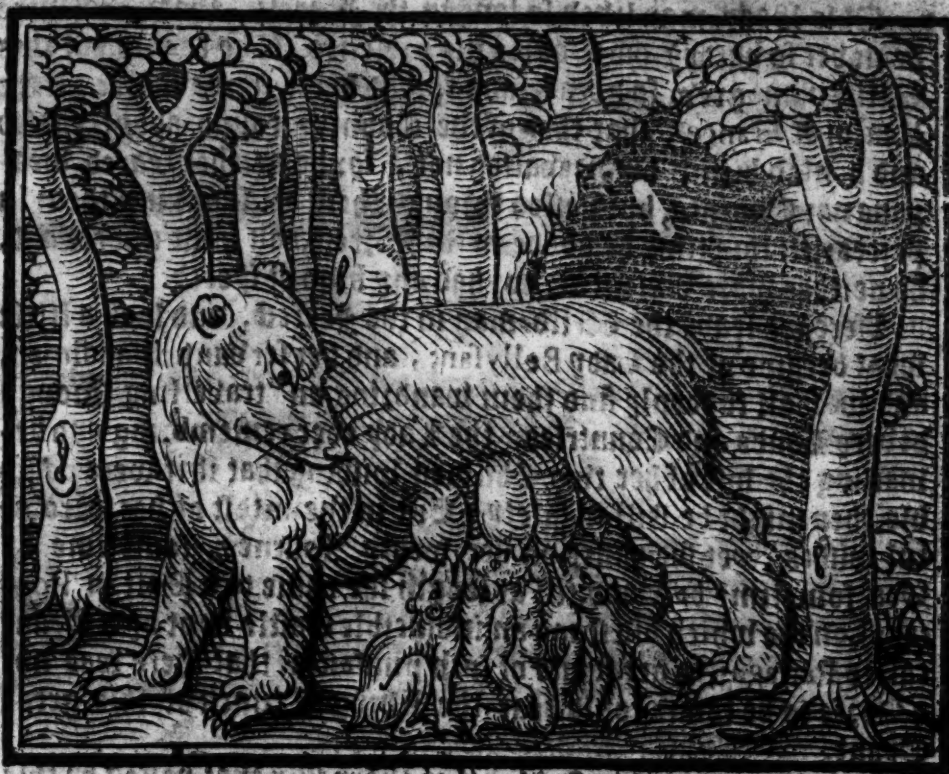
that the Emperour had exiled you, he lightly gave credit that yours was the fault, and therefore he lays all the blame on you. O! (quoth the Lady) now what I most feared is come to passe, and I well perceiue that I am beset with aduersaries on euer side: Well, be it as it may be, the Emperour hath exiled me without cause, what then shall I do? I will neher return again to Paris, but take my way into some remote Land, where my body with my faults shall be smothered: For my Brothers anger is grown so great, that he could willingly deliver me over to death; therefore it is better to dye and to save my life, then fall into the fury of so angry a Brother. This doleful speech she delivered in tears, which Blandiman perceiuing, said unto her: Lady leaue off your tears, for be assured of my faithful service, and here I offer my self, life, and all to be at your service; go whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange aduenture, and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future dangers, where now we shall be forced to leaue them with sorrowful hearts, and return again to speak something of the Bear, that carried away one of the Children.



CHAP. VI.

Of the Bear, that bare away one of the Lady
Belysants Children.

THE Bear (as you have heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no violence, but bare it into her Cave, which was dark and obscure. In this Cave the Old Bear had four Young Ones, amongst whom she laid the Child to be devoured, but mark the chance, and you shall find it at last miraculous, for all this while the Young Bears did it no harm, but with their rough paws stroaked it softly. The Old Bear perceiuing they



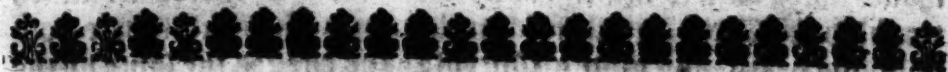
they did not devour it, she took a Pearlish kind of fashon toward it: insomuch that she kept it, and gave it suck among her young ones the space of one whole Year. This child by reason of the nourishment it received from the Bear, became rough all over like a bear, and as he grew in strength, began to range up and down in the Woods, and when he met with other beasts would strike them, and got such mastery over them, that they began to shun the place wherein he came; he was so extreme fierce amongst them, and in this beast-like state passed he the term of fifteen years, growing up to such strength, that scarce any man or beast in the Forrest durst stir abroad, fearing to fall into his hands, lest he should put them to death and after eat their flesh, more like unto a ravenous beast, than any humane Creature. His name was called Orson because a Bear had been his nurse, and also rough like a Bear.

This Bear-man lived so long in the Forrest, that none (were he never so hardy) durst abide his presence. The renown of this Wild-man grew so great, and spread so far abroad over all the Realm of France, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he neither feared weapons nor Engines, but passed through them all, snapping them in peices: All this time he abode in the Forrest, you must understand, he neither wore Garment, nor had any kind of speech.

Here we leave the Wild-man in the Forrest, and look a little what became of the Lady Bellysant, and her servant Blandiman, and we shall suddenly find them wandring and travelling through divers Lands and Countries, the Lady ever remembring and bewailing the loss of her two Children, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety: But in the midst of her sorrowful wishes, yet she passed on her weary Journey, sometime by Sea, sometime by Land, till at length she came to a Port in Portugal, on the which did stand an invincible Castle kept by a Giant called Parragus, so great and of such puissance, that there was not a Horse to be found could bear the living Trunk of this great Giant.

It so hapned at this Castle, that every ship that passed by this Port was to pay tribute to this Giant, which he himself did daily come aboard to receive. At length he came into the ship wherein the Lady Bellysant, and her Squire had passed (for she was laden with all manner of Rich Merchandizes) so casting his eyes about, he espied Bellysant, which he kindly took by the hand, and led her into the Castle to his Wife (for he was Married to a beautiful Lady) Blandiman followed his Lady also, fearing the Giant, but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any violence, but presented her to his Wife, who received her gladly, and had great joy at the Gracious presence of so beautiful a Lady. The Giant gave charge to his Wife, to use her honorably, and Blandiman her Squire. During her abode in the Castle, she would often shed tears, when she bethought her of the loss of her two Children, which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best manner she could, and ever placed her next her own person, for the joy and pleasure that she ever took in

in her companie. Within this Castle she tarried long time, and here we must leave her, and now we will return back again to tell you somewhat of the Emperour of Constantinople, and the false Arch-Priest.



CHAP. VI.

How by the Councel of the Arch-priest, new Customes, and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople, and how the Treason came to light.

Alexander the Emperour, having shamefully expelled Bessy-
sant his Wife, Sister to King Pepin, oftentimes repented
him of the fact: but by the cursed Counsel of the Arch-Priest, un-
to whose Words the Emperour gave such credit continually that
what he spake was an Oracle in the ears of the said Emperour:
Insomuch as he continually heaped new Honours upon that
Traiterous Priest, advancing him even aboue the highest
in his Empire, and whatsoever he commanded, was effected.
At last, having gotten all power and authority into his hands,
he began to increase the customes and taxes of the City of Con-
stantinople, which exactions of his against all reason, struck even
to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the rest of
these his forced impositions, (it happened that according to their
yearly customes) there were held a great Mart in the City, which
falls out about the month of September. Hereunto resorted many
people for divers occasions, especially Merchants. The Fair or
Mart-day being come, the Emperour gave the charge thereof unto
this Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himself, and to the
same purpose armed 200 men to guard his own person: being thus
accompanied, he took his way into the City, to effect this new
charge which the Emperour had so lately bestowed upon him.
It chanced so, that among the rest of them that sold Wares,
the Merchant was there present (of whom you have read before)
namely,

namely, that Merchant that came riding by the way whilst Blandman (the Ladies Esquire) and the Arch-Priest was fighting: The Arch-Priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful lest all his villainy should now come to light. The presence of this Merchant much troubled the Arch-Priest, inasmuch as he wished (if it were possible) his death, and would assuredly have effected the same by the authority that he now had in his hands, but still he feared some great tumult would arise thereby. Now mark what followed: This Merchant among the rest, was richly furnished with all rich and costly wares as Cloath of Gold, Silver Silk, &c. whereby he received great wealth, and took more money than any five Merchants beside. The Fair being ended, the Arch-Priest sent forth his officers, to demand and receive his accustomed duties due upon the sale of those Merchandizes. The officers came unto this Merchant, and said, Sir, you must pay ten pence on every pound that you have taken, for so it is ordained by the great officer to whom it doth belong.

The Merchant hereat being angry, said, cursed be that dishonest Arch-Priest, for he is the only cause of these new raised exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long since had his desert, and with shame and infamy had ended his Days: At which reproachful words against the Arch-Priest, the Officer took his staff and smote the Merchant on the head, that presently the blood gushed out. Then the Merchant feeling the blood about his ears, drew his sword and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for dead. Upon this arose a great rout throughout the Fair, inasmuch as the rest of the Officers coming up to help their fellow, took the Merchant and brought him before the Arch-Priest. The Arch-Priest glad of this opportunity, would suddenly have put him to death, but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his cause tried by the Law. The Arch-Priest fearing the people, sent him away to the Emperor, for nothing could satisfy him but his life: But mark, in seeking the life of the Merchant, he purchased his own death, as hereafter followeth.

The Arch-Priest caused the Merchant to be brought into the
Emper

Emperours Palace, whereas he in person sat as Judge. The Emperour being set, the Arch-Bishop brought his advocate to plead his cause, which was to this effect, that the Merchant had committed murder, & also had spoken many opprobrious words against the said Arch-Bishop. The advocate having ended his accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his knees before the Emperour, and said, Mighty and most excellent Prince, out of your benignity, give me but audience to be heard, before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a matter of so great importance that it touches your person even in the highest degree of treason. Say on, said the Emperour: Mighty Emperour and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about this your Palace, that none depart from this place. The Emperour did as he requested: then said the Merchant with a loud voice, Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the honour of the Emperour, and the triumphant reign of his person, attend my words: For the time is come that the Treason of the cursed Arch-Bishop will now be revealed and come to light. Then thus great Emperour, this is that cursed man whom you have ever nourished, and brought to great honour, who hath deceived your trust; for he it is that hath wrought all the discord betwixt you and your vertuous Lady, whom you have banished both from your Bed, Court, and Country, and by whom you have received more dishonour than ever he reaped honour from you: For it had been his part most of any to have nourished and advanced your Renown, and to have preferred your honour, but contrarily he hath made my Dread Lord infamous by these his wicked projects, & brought upon you great scandal among all Nations: for he secretly and under hand made love to your Empress, but she denies him: the which he perceiving, that there was no likelihood to accomplish his desire, it drove him into a thousand fears, lest this his dishonourable act should come to light: and therefore devised to salisse unto your ears, her faithful love unto your Bed. Of all which his false accusations, I say here before you, and all your Lords and Barons, that he speaketh like a Traitor, & for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the truth of what these eyes of mine were witnesses.

It so happened on a day (after the banishment of the Emperors Bellyfaint) as I was riding about my affairs, I chanced to travel through a wood: at last passing along the way, I found this treacherous Priest transformed out of the habit of his Priesthood, into the shape of a Knight, even armed at all points ready for the combat with the enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I might behold him in sight with another man unarmed, which at last I found to be Blandiman, Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in the time of her exile.

All perceiving they encountred one another so fiercely, began to call unto them, to give over their direful fight: but they little regarded what I said: I did perceive the Lady piteously weeping, and at last said unto me thus: Gentle Merchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid against this treacherous Arch-Priest, that seeketh by force to rob me of mine honour. This is he, and onely he, by whom I am banished from my Emperors Bed and Country. With that I put spurs to my horse, and ran between them to separate them, which this Arch-Priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the Wood, being full assured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durst not open my mouth unto you, for fear his greatness would have outshined my truth, and so have brought my self unto an untimely death.

The Emperor having heard this tale, sighed, and at last fell into tears: in which tears he turned him unto the Arch-Priest, relating his disloyalty in this manner: Ah thou false servant (quoth he) have I ever studied to do thee honor, and exalt thee to high dignities, and hast thou quitted all my love and trust with disloyalty and treason? Well, I have seen now what I ever mistrusted, thou hast made me of all men most unhappy. But it is not so much thy fault as my own, thy treason hath bewitched me: In an evil hour I gave credit to thy false speaking tongue, and thereby deserve to carry the brand of my own folly.

The Arch-Priest hearing the Emperor thus distempered, began to treat his Highness not to be so impatient, neither to give credit to this slanderous tale that the Merchant had commenced against him: for (quoth he) he helpeth me, and I am no way guilty

ty of that wherewith he accuseth me : thou (yeit said) (quoth the Merchant) thou canst not excuse thy self in what I have charged thee withal, and if thou stand still in the denial, I challenge thee by the single Combate, to maintain the truth, and try my Quarrel : and hereupon, I throw down my gage, and withal tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I have here spoken : and more than that, ere night shut in, I will deliver thy body to death, or yeild my self vanquished.

The Emperour seeing the Merchant so resolute, and to stand to the tryal of the combate, he said: Arch-Biest, it is time that either thou quit thy self by answering this challenge, or to yeild thy self guilty of what hath been laid to thy charge. The Arch-Biest replied on this manner : Mighty Emperour, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchants challenge, or take up Arms, is contrary to my place and calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay (quoth the Emperour) in this case no excuse is to be admitted, but you must either fight, or yeild your self a Traitor to our Crown and dignity. At these words the Arch-Biest was somewhat troubled in mind, yet at last he was faine to accept the Combate, because the Emperour charged him so deeply: and besides, he could have no excuse admitted. So the Emperour commanded them both to safe keeping, till such time he had sent Letters to King Pepin of France: but in conclusion the Traitor had his desert, as hereafter followeth.



CHAP. VII.

How the Emperour by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King Pepin to see the Combate fought between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant.

The day of the combate was appointed, & the field prepared, & things came unto the Emperour, that King Pepin was come to Rome, to the aid of the Pope against the Infidels. The Emperour hearing

hearing therefore, by the grave counsel of the Lords, dispatched Ambassadors thither, with command to bring King Pepin to Constantinople, meaning thereby to make him an eye-witness of these contentions, and of the cause of this combat, which was to try the Arch-Bishop a traitor, & also to hold the Emperor excused in that he had by his false accusations banished his Empress. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine, that after long travel, at last they came to Rome, whereas they found King Pepin, as before was told them. King Pepin having heard of their coming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their several degrees: all which being done, the Ambassadors thus spake unto King Pepin. Great Lord, we present these Letters from Alexander thy Brother, Emperor of Constantinople, our Lord and Master, of which we intreat a speedy answer. King Pepin took the Letters graciously, and read them and having thoroughly considered the contents, with a loud voice he said: My Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of tidings, and also of as great admiration. The Emperor Alexander greets me well, and sends me word that my Sister Belysant his betrothed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully banished, and that by reason of a false Arch-Bishop unto whom he hath given too much trust: which Bishop for these his treasonable facts, is accused by a Merchant, & for trial of the truth of this his accusation, will put himself in jeopardy of life, by single combat in open field, body to body, with his treacherous Arch-Bishop. Now it is so fallen out, that the day and place is ready for the trial of his fact, whereby I shall be fully satisfied whether my Sister hath been guilty of that wherewith she hath been charged, and most shamefully cast forth into banishment: upon all which I vow by my Crown and dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered her this indignity, without just cause, that I will be avenged against him, in the extreamest manner that War will thunder forth against him. Having ended his speech unto his Lords in presence of the Ambassadors, he commanded with speed that every man should address himself to accompany him to Constantinople to behold the manner of this fight between the Merchant and the Arch-Bishop.

The day of his departure from Rome being come, he takes his way

way towards Constantinople, where after some few days of travel, he safely arrived. The Emperour hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made triumphs to welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach. The Emperour mounted on horse-back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City to meet his Brother King. At last they met, but the Emperour overcome with sorrow and tears at the remembrance of Belysant, could not utter a Word. On the other side, Pepin being fiercely angered at what happened to his Sister, gave no respect unto the Emperours tears, but proudly began to gird him on this manner: Emperour (quoth he) leave off these your lamentations, and shake off these weeds of sorrow that you seem to wear for my Sister Belysant; for he that hath a harlot unto his wife, I account him mad to grieve at her misbehaviour, and since my Sister hath proved such a one, let her go and take care for her self, she is not worthy of so much as one tear from such an eye of Majesty.

Pay, nay, said the Emperour, speak not you so evilly against your Sister, for I am now fully perswaded, that she is composed of all vertue and true honesty, and that against all equity, I have banished her out of my Country. Think you so now (quoth King Pepin) then are you worthy of a double shame, and you do betwixt unto the world your weakness, and what great foolishness remains in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a Traitor too, you would with such rigor proceed against an innocent Lady, and so suddenly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into banishment, shame, and dishonour, being of the Blood Royal of France. The Emperour hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, and said unto him in this manner: Alas, my Lord, do not thus follow me with wrath and anger, but rather turn your tongue upon some milder saying, for so that intent have I sent for you, that your own eyes may be a witness of the truth. 'Tis true (quoth King Pepin) but it is all too late what now you say, for you have delivered over my Sister into the worlds infamy, and that moze is, even to banishment; and (for ought I know) to death it self, for I know not whether ever I shall behold her face again, or not: Hee, hee, that you being so great a Person, should be so affectionately born away, to give such sudden judgement against an

Innocent.

Innocent: I do confess, one may commit a foul and dishonorable act, but Repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown: For that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, it is never again possible to be recovered. Again, how little have you esteemed of the honour of my kingly office, judge you, when first without deliberation, and next without any knowledge given me, you have proceeded so against my Sister: I make it plain against you, that envy towards her and me, was the only cause of these false & unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these wrongs passed betwixt them, they were now entered Constantinople, where with great joy and gladness they were received of the Inhabitants. The Emperour would have had King Pepin to have lodged with him in his Palace, but the King denied, and caused his Train to lodge within the City, and he himself also. When the Emperour caused many gifts and presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: for King Pepin thought of nothing but the dishonour done unto his Sister, and that she rather, for the whole City accounted her the fairest, the most vertuous, and the chafest Lady in all the world; and that by injustice and treason she was banished.



CHAP. IX.

Now the Merchant and the High-priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing of the Lady Bellyfant, and what a glorious victory did befall the Merchant.

NOW was the day appointed come for the Combat between the Arch-priest and the Merchant: wherefore every thing was made in readiness, according to the command of the Emperour. At last there came both the Combatants into the field, and presented themselves before the Emperour. Being both before the Emperour, his Attendants, (Knights, and others;) and the Arch-priest, armed in a most sumptuous Armo^r of proof, all imbowed with

with gold and pearl, which made such a glittering shew, that it even dazzled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-Priest came forth into the field, and took his place appointed him, at the one end of the Lists, appointed for that purpose. The Emperour beholding the glorious shew that the Arch-Priest made in his Arms, called forth the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, & in the presence of the assembly, dubbed him knight. Then commanded he that a most rich Armour should be put upon him in the presence of the Emperour, who during the time he was Arming, promised unto this Merchant, if he overcame the Arch-Priest, to advance him in great libings, and high authority. These two adversaries being now in readines, and each having their Blazon about their neck, their Horses were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give battle: the Emperour gave straight charge unto all his Officers of arms, to have a special e unto the Arch-Priest, for fear lest he on the sudden should fly the field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their libes. The Merchant thus mounted, and his sword girt to him, first entred the Lists, after whom entred such abundance of people, that they were numberless. When after came the Arch-Priest, sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great honour and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Lists, ready to charge one another, King Pepin was there in person, called out aloud unto the Merchant, saying unto him: My friend, the Gods give thee victory against this false Traitor. I baw unto thee here before this great assembly (so I may but find out the truth of my Sister Bellysant,) notwithstanding the great advancement that the Emperour hath promised, to take thee into France, and make thee companion with the best of my Kingdom. The Merchant gave the King great thanks, and said: Dread King, I doubt not but this night to make this traiterous Priest confesse that he hath treacherously sought the destruction of your Sister. Then came a Herald, administering to them both an oath, and so clearing the Lists, left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshals of the field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received, but they put upon their Horses, and ran



with such violence together, that their Spears were broken to their hands. When they began to set forward to another course, charging each other with their swords, in such violent manner, that with their fury they rebounded from their Arms to the ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Coats, and left them as a prey for those that attended the fight.

The Arch-Bishop seeing himself so ill matched, gave over the fight full towards the evening (for such was the custom of the Country, that in any challenged Combate either party might refuse to follow the fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing time, so the Combats were seldom banquished before sun-set, or else abide the sentence of death) thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant. Which the Merchant being well unto, so behaved himself, that he prepared to receive the Arch-Bishop courageously when he encountered him: insomuch that when they came together to make trial of their valor, and to get conquest,

the one over the other, the Merchant so redoubled his strokes, that at last he smote off one of his ears, and his steel Habergion, and with the violence of the same blow, the Merchants sword fell from his hand. The Arch-Bishop perceiuing his enemy unarmed, he put spurs to his horse, and charged him with such violence, that he ran against the Merchants horse and thrust out one of his eyes: the horse feeling himself hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curvetting so furiously that he unhorsed his rider, and so hard was the fortune of the Merchant, that in his fall, his foot hung fast in the stirrop, whereby he was brought into great danger, the horse hurrying him along the field, that all were very sorrowful to behold this lamentable spectacle, and with the amazement thereof grew desperate in their hopes; King Pepin also was sore discouraged at this disasterous chance, that the tears did euen trickle down his cheeks, and in a silent speech to himself; thus he spake: Alas Merchant, I now well perceiue thy days are at an end; and that the trust I reposed in thee is utterly frustrate: for by thy fall I see my Sisters chastity to be weak; and the rather, for that the Gods hath suffered thee to fall so unluckily this day; so that I must needs confesse that the Emperors hath done well in expelling her his Kingdom: Oh, that her day of birth, had proved her day of buriall, it had been happy for her, but twice happier to me, for only by her is the blood Royal of France brought into great infamy: and were it so, I had her at my dispose, I would be the first man should see execution done upon her, euen to death.

Now, that which was so miraculous, was, all this time that the Merchant was dragged up and down the field, the Arch-Bishop could not inforce his horse to come up unto the Merchants, but fled out too and fro, whereby he could not make a prey upon the Merchant, as he thought to have done. But see, at the last the Merchants horse, that had thus vexed him up and down the field, foundered and fell down, which gave great advantage to the Merchant, who with that fall got his leg from forth the stirrop, and at last got up on his feet, like a valiant and hardy Champion. The Arch-Bishop perceiuing the Merchant had recovered his legs, came running with strong violence upon him, and thereby sent him five or six sore blows upon his head and shoulders, that the

poor Merchant was even astounded. At last, he was forced to give back to recover breath, and in a very little space, finding himself somewhat relieved, he subtilly and fiercely gave a fresh assault upon the Arch-Deiſt, against whom he struck with such violence, that the sword fell out of his hand, but he had first so wounded the Arch-Deiſt, that the blood ran quite through his armor upon the earth. This so vexed the Arch-Deiſt, that he grew mad with rage, and turned his horse upon the Merchant, minding to have overrun him with his horse. But the Merchant perceiving his distress, prepared to receive him, and therewithal drew a long knife, and pached it into the belly of the horse, so that the horse being thus wounded, began to sing and leap, insomuch as the Arch-Deiſt was in danger to be unhorsed, and doing what he could to save himself, he lost his shield. The Merchant espyed him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it: that done, he made again towards his horse, and smote him into the belly with his sword, so that by this time, both the horse and his rider came tumbling down upon the ground.

The Arch-Deiſt being thus unhorsed, was very nimble to recover himself, but yet the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow, that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the ground, and then leaped upon him, pulled off his helmet, thinking to have smitten off his head, when the Arch-Deiſt saw himself thus vanquished, he was exceeding wroth, but seeing little availed, he said thus unto the Merchant: Alas, my Friend, I beseech thee take mercy upon me, and while I am yet living, give me some time to confess myself, that I may free my soul of danger, for to thee I yield my self as vanquished. The Merchant hearing him say so, was very courteous, and granted him his desire. The Deiſt had no sooner gotten on his feet, but he forsook his confession, and suddenly got the Merchant in his arms and threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Merchant, I have thee now at advantage, and from my hands thou shalt not escape with life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect. He replied the Merchant, hast thou thus betrayed me? Well, it is so, that now I stand at thy mercy.

mercies that thou mayst do with me what pleaseth thee: therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my life I shall gladly do it. Then thus; go with me before the Emperour and King Papin, and there openly in the hearing of all men, testifie that thou falsely hast accused me, and that thereby I may be cleared of those false clamunations which by thy means have been brought upon me: all which if thou effectually accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy life, and besides, be a means unto the Emperour and his Brother, to buy thee peace and forgiveness of this thy soul last committed both against me and them also: Say more, I swear to thee by the Faith of a Gentleman, and by the Order of Priesthood, to give thee a Piece of mine in marriage, who shall be to thee rich, fair, & of pleasant behaviour: and to conclude, thou shalt say more then any of thy kindred ever told, thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now advise thy self, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable life, or miserable in an untimely death. The Merchant having heard the Arch-Priests tale, was upon the suddain exceeding sorrowful, and not without cause, but not knowing on the suddain, what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered: Sir Priest, your Arguments are grounded upon good reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your desires, so that you will be as mindful of your oaths and promises. In me quoth the Arch-priest, there shall appear no fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forwards towards the Emperour, and there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the Arch-Priest, wherefore rise up then, and let us go together. The Merchant had no sooner got on his feet, but he began again a fresh to open all the Treason of the Arch-Priest, even to his teeth; and again he took courage, and now would requite him in the same swace he had served him before: and suddenly he clasping the Arch-Priest in his arms, he threw him down, and having him at advantage, he said thus: Arch-Priest; you have taught me to play my part, and therefore think no more upon confessions, for you shall confesse to me or none. The Arch-Priest seeing himself beaten at his own weapons, began again to entreat, but the

the Merchant not regarding his words, presently put out his eye, and gave him so many deadly blows, that he made him sure enough for rising to do him any harm. Then the Merchant called his Marshals of the field, and said: Lo here you may see that I have done my best endeavour against the Arch-Priest, and if he be vanquished, say so, for I am sure I have brought him to such a pass, that I may kill him ought-right if I please. Therefore my request now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander Emperor of Constantinople, and King Pepin of France, hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be ear-witnesses of the confession which the Arch-Priest shall make unto him, and also to hear in what unjust manner he waged this Combat against me.

The Marshals did according to the request of the Merchant, and then presently came King Alexander the Emperor, with King Pepin, and all the Nobles, even to the place where the Arch-Priest lay all sorrowful, and fully vanquished. When the Emperor demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-Priest confessed, declaring the whole plot of his villainies, and how by his means the Lady Belysant had been wrongfully banished. When the Standers by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of tears were shed on every side, but especially the Emperor, for his lamentations were so violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterness and hearty sorrow. Now if the Emperor were so sorrowful, what may you think of King Pepin her Brother. Alas it was not without great cause, when they saw and knew that by too much trust given to a treacherous Priest they had lost the virtuous Lady Belysant. Between these two great Princes there was great joy and great sorrow: Joy to King Pepin, that his Sister was found innocent and blameless: Sorrow to the Emperor, that he should be the only means (by false suggestions) of his wifes banishment. At last lamentations was laid apart: When they had heard all the confessions of the Arch-Priests Treasons, The Emperor consulted with his counsel that the Traitor should be put into a Caldron of hot burning oil, stick, and so finish his miserable days, as he had traitorously sought the life of that innocent La-

up: So the execution was suddenly to be done, and it being done, the assembly of people of all sorts was dismissed.

Afterwards King Pepin withdrew himself towards his lodging, but the Emperour, sorrowful for what had happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himself at his feet, began thus to say: Alas dear Brother, I am all sorrowful for this my error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable crime against you, my Lady your Sister, and the residue of these great Nobles your attendants: Let it suffice, that I behold my own folly, what shall I say? I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my self into your hands, and do to me whatsoever please you: and for a further satisfaction, I render up into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining: for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not master of mine own affections. Take it I say, for I will no longer be served, but during the rest of my life will become a servant to thee or any: for no better have I deserved. King Pepin perceiving the Emperour so passionate, and so humble minded, kindly took him from the ground, and before all his Lords, freely forgave all trespasses. So that before they parted, there was a general peace concluded on both parties between them, and a most speedy course taken to send abroad into all parts of the world to seek out the distressed Lady Bellyfant. Thus all things settled in order, King Pepin prepared to take his leave of the Emperour, and so returned back again into his own Country.



CHAP. X.

How King Pepin returned from Constantinople into France, and after sailed to Rome, to fight against the Sarazens that had surprized the City.

King Pepin having taken his leave, from Constantinople (as you have heard) after a long journey, arrived in France, and so to Orleans, to refresh his long-tired spirits, tossed too and fro

in melancholly and heauy cogitations, for the woeful mischances befallen unto his Sister Bellysant. Being thus safely arrived, and seated at Orleans, the King was right sorrowful that at the last he had attained the place he so much desired, by reason that it was one of the goodliest Forrests in the Realm of France. Being (as I said) come hither, he caused great Banquets to be made for his welcome home: which was accordingly performed.

In the midst of their Feasting and Rebellings, the Esquire that had the charge of the Wyphan Valentine, took and presented him before the King, saying unto his Majesty on this manner: Dread Sovereign, Lo, here I present before you the poor Wyphan that your Majesty found in the Forrest of Orleans, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at mine expence, Dread Sovereign, but at your own. My Leige, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, because he is growing to mans estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please: The King having heard the words of the Esquire, called this Wyphan (named Valentine) unto him, and took him by the hand, and moved diuers questions unto him, all which he answered with much modesty, and great wisdom, and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupbord of Plate should be given unto him. Moreover (said the King) I command that this Wyphan Valentine be dearly preserved & kept, for that you shall perceiue I respect him aboue common love, I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished & kept with my Daughter Eglantine, she is both fair, wise, and well endowed with all the richest gifts of Nature.

The King having given this command, it was accordingly accomplished, insomuch that they were both under one government of one and the same Purse, and had one and the same attendants: yea, every way they joyed one in the company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of lamentation till they came together again: but especially the Kings daughter, who so pondered on the prudent carriages of the Wyphan, that she became in love with him, insomuch as his absence brought her into a thousand fears, and

oꛑave her melancholly thoughts into a thousand doubts.

Now Valentine was ever practising himself in feats of Arms, as Hoyle, Armor, Jests, and Turnaments, still exposing himself to all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the inclination of this youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, furnished him with Armor, Hoyle, Lands, Revenues, and made him Lord of rich possessions. Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court many secret mutterings, whereby many fretted so sore in envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying, that when he was at the best, he was but a found straꝑ, poor, base, without any known Parents or Friends, of no gentle or noble stock, and such like: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other revenge, but sit him down and weep: whose tears fair Eglantine perceiving, would in a tender woman-like affection accompany him, even pouring forth her tears also for company.

At length when he saw tears little availed, he began to forsake it, and taking heart, bore himself like a man, amidst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle frame; that he gained the love of all sorts, and degrees, as well Nobles, as Inferiours.

Valentine thus growing up in love of the Court, all this while his Brother Orson runs in the Forrest, all rough and covered with hair like a Bear, and leading the life of a Beast, where we leave him for a while, and return unto the affairs of King Pepin. It so chanced, that there came unto Orleans divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding aid against the Sarazens, enemies of the holy faith, who had lately taken the City of Rome by violence: King Pepin understanding hereof by divers Letters received, addrested himself, his powers to make resistance against this common enemy. And amongst the rest of his worthy followers, he ordained this young Valentine a chief commander. Fair Eglantine hearing that Valentine should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful; for that she loved him more than any other Creature; and secretly by stealth sent a Messenger unto him, to come and speak with her: and when he came, she sighing, said unto him, Alas Valentine, my Love, now I am quite bereft of all

my joy, for I perceiue you will betake your self to a dangerous War. Gentle Love, leave me not so desolate, would to the Gods, that I had neither Father nor friend in the world to contradict my will, & then shouldst thou soon perceiue how well my affection stands to thy person: for if wishes might avail, I swear (by the Gods) thou art the only man I would join my self unto in the bands of marriage, and then shouldst thou be the King of France, and I Queen. The young man hearing her idle imaginations, said, Damsell, leave these womanish dotages, you know I am no person fitting your estate, I am but a founde tray that your father hath caused long time to be nourished for charity sake. I am no way either fitting you, or the meanest Damsel attending your person, make your choice else where, and join Royal blood unto yours, and so with all duty I take my leave, and commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his speech, away he goes, leaving the poor Lady all heavy, desolate, and in the midst of mourning.

By this time, the King and all his Powers were in a readinesse to depart, and taking their way from Orleans towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forrest, and being entered, the King called his Lords and Barons together, and said thus unto them. My Lords it is not unknown unto you, that in these Woods (as report goeth) there lieth a strange monster, a Wild-man, much feared of Passengers, which spectacle of mans shape, I long to behold, before I venture out any further upon our intended voyage to Rome. The Lords generally consented, and the chase was suddenly appointed. Being entered the Wood, they chased diuers sorts of Wild-beasts, and overcame them: but as for Orson the Wild-man, none durst adventure the finding forth of him, save onely his Brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) & he followed still the chase, hoping at last both to find and to fight with him also. Every way they begirt the Wood, some one way, some another: the King himself ventured so far, that he came before a Cave, dark, & obscure, whereas this Wild-man used to hide himself. Orson perceiuing the King, rushed out upon him, caught him within his nails (the which were long and crooked) and in rough and rabenous manner, cast him on the ground. The King thus

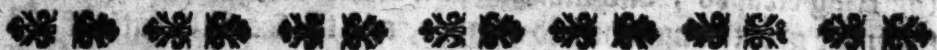
suddenly surprized by a savage man, never lookt for life, but in a piteous manner cryed out for help, who was seconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, which espying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew his sword to have run the wild-man through. Orson perceiuing the glittering sword, left the King and ran fori out upon the Knight, took him in his arms, that he overthrew him Horse and all. The Horse soze affrighted, got up again, and in a mad fit ran up and down the Forrest, but as for the Wilder (though a Kt. at Arms) Orson held him so fast with his thwangs and talons, that at last he pulled him in peices. In the mean space the King escaped, and meeting part of his company, related to them the great danger he had escaped, and the fearful death of the Knight. These tydings much amazed the rest of the company: yet being manfully resolved, they joynd themselves together, and marched towards the cave to meet with Orson, and either to take him alive, or to put him to death in the Cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead & torn in peices, but Orson they could not find for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother Valentine: of whose proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceiuing their labor lost, gave ower the chace, and set for ward towards Rome. After this, the King ranked his forces into battel-ray, and the great Ensign of France was given to one called Myllan Daugler, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader, so that he and his two Brethren, Gervays and Sampson, had the whole command of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come unto Rome, King Pepin desired battel, and would fain understand the state that the City now stood in, under the conquest of the Sarazans, but it was told him he should not be too inquisitive of those affairs: for the Admiral of the Sarazens had surprized the City, and put multitudes to the sword, and had spoiled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their Heathenish Idols; and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Priors, Monks, Priests & all the Ecclesiastical persons, for to serve at their Heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Devils, after the custome of the Heathens.

When

When King Pepin understood hereof he was much enraged, to hear that the Christians were thus captivated by Heathens: Wherefore he addrested himself nearer unto the City, and there having assembled all his forces, he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a sudden assault, for his fury was so great against these Heathenish Sarazens, that he vowed revenge upon them: but taking better advice, he reserved himself & his Arm for a season: what after befell, shall be declared at large, when fit occasion serveth our purpose.



CHAP. XL

How King Pepin besieged Rome, & how Valentine justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

King Pepin being thus come to Rome, besieged it, and after some few days spent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mightie men of War, and began to speak unto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the Christian Faith, and Church of Rome, hath put many Christians to the Sword, and violently troden under foot all such as withstood his power; therefore it is our duties to commiserate their estate that are thus overthrowen, and to try the fortune of a battel against those Heathenish Pagans, and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead Carcasses as a prey, as man have done before. Wherefore, I King Pepin, resting upon this resolution, would fain find out a man to bear unto the proud Admiral a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finished his speech, there was none amongst them made him any answer to his request. At length Valentine seeing all stand mute, steppen forth before the Emperour, and began to speak on this manner: Mighty Soberaign, so you be pleased to give me leave, I shall undertake the

the Message, and shall no whit fear to speak both unto the Pagan Admiral, and to the whole Host of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they be, and my return shall make proof that I have done my Message both with honor and advantage to your Majesty.

The King hearing Valentine thus forward, of such undoubted and valiant resolution, was right joyful: and all those of his princely train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous spirit. Whereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of defiance, and deliver the same to Valentine. Valentine prepared himself thereunto, and no sooner had he received the Letters, but he took leave of the King, and all his train, and being bravely mounted, he took his way towards Rome, and so to the Palace where the Admiral lay. So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and saluted him after this manner: The Gods preserve the Noble & Puissant King Pepin, my Lord and Sovereign: and Mahomet whom thou servest, save and defend the redoubted Admiral. When Valentine had thus spoken the Admiral roared him from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning brow replied thus unto him: Messenger return, and get thee gone out of my sight, and say thus unto King Pepin, will him either renounce his faith, and believe on Mahomet, or else let him look to receive no other sentence then death, and so destroy him, together with all his Lands and Kingdom. Get thee gone and make here no longer abode, go I say reply not a Word, for my heart is all enraged, that so long I suffer thee.

Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprise, thus to enter my Palace, to deliver any such message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, If that I did assuredly know that what thou hast done were through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mock at our Majesty, thou shouldst never return to King Pepin, to carry an answer to thy proud Masters Letters. Valentine hearing these hot and furious words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid: wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said, High and Mighty Emperor, do not imagine that by pride or presumption I am come before you, for when

you shall understand the manner of my coming, you will be assured thereof. *Why then* (quoth the Admiral) *say on, tell us how thou art come, for I swear by Mahomet, I shall take great pleasure in hearing thee relate thine enterprise.* Then said Valentine, *Sir, so it is that I was accused to King Pepin for a Coward, and then, that since I came with him to this War, I would secretly have stole away from the Camp, and returned back again into France: For which* (great Admiral) *the King hath me in great disgrace, and vowed the next morning to smite off my head. I perceiving my self in this danger, thought rather to save my life, than to lose both life and honour, and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court, that I would undertake to come to your Court to desire you on King Pepins behalf: and therewithal, that I would challenge you to break three spears with you in single combat, to try your valiancy, and to win unto my self that lost honour that before I told unto you: wherefore my request is, that your Greatness would grant me my request, otherwise I dare never return again, lest the King put me to death.* The Admiral hearing this pittifull, yet cunning tale of Valentine, said unto him, *Son, I do swear by Mahomet, thou shalt not be refused, but at this instant I offer thee the Juffs, and to the end, that those French-men that lie in siege before the City may have a sight hereof, and see thy valour, I will ordain the place of Juffing to be without the City.* Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his acceptance and feigned love, he fell down and kissed the feet of the Admiral. Valentine grew up in great favour in the Admirals Court, but yet it often troubled his mind, that he never could understand who were his Parents: but the while he bestowed his wandering thoughts hereabout, the Admiral said thus unto him: *Faire Son, methinks you are very pensive and sad. 'Tis true* (quoth he) *and not without cause, for I am much afraid that I shall be slain in these Juffs, wherefore my request is, that I may have a Confessor to give me absolution for my sins.* When the Admiral commanded that a Priest should be brought unto him, The Priest being come, said unto Valentine, *Now confess you unto me.* Valentine getting the Priest aside, and being together, he said thus unto him: *Sir, you are a Christian Priest, and above all*

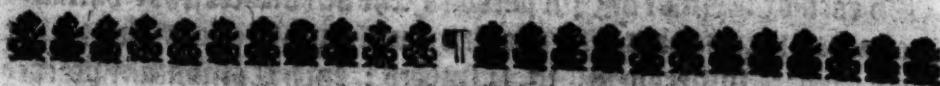
all other, you ought most to defend the Christian Faith, wherefore hearken to that I shall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great secrecie. Thus it is, You know that this day I am to fight with the heathenish Admiral, the greatest enemy of Christian People: now I am well assured, that a great number of the Varazens will issue forth of the City, to be eye-witnesses of these Iusts, to be held without the walls of the City. Therefore you shall give warning to all Christians to keep within the walls, arming themselves in a readinesse, and closely keep it from the ears of the Pagans: so when the Pagans are come forth to behold these Iusts, the Christians suddenly shall surprize the Guards that keep the Gates and if any mutany arise, let them keep out those that are out. And send a Messenger to King Pepin of what is done, that he with his Army may come upon them that are without, while those within are set on by the armed Christians, so begirting them on every side, that in the end we may make such a slaughter on them, that the Christians may receive both their City in peace, and their former liberty. So having ended his speech, the Priest departed. Then the Admiral commanded Valentine to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his, named Salazar, commanding him to see Valentine as well armed at all points as himself, and moreover charged his Nephew to deliver unto Valentine the best horse in his stable. Salazar having received this command from his Uncle the Admiral, took Valentine and led him into a state Hall: being come thither, he caused to be laid before him divers Armors, willing him to make choice of the best: Valentine cast his eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the Armor wherewith he should be armed, and making himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the outer Court, whereto he was attended with his horse, ready to put his foot into the stirrup. Being come down out of the Hall, he presently mounted his horse, the Admiral issued likewise ready armed out of his private Palace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the chief Gate of the City of Rome, for on that day King Pepin had laid his siege,

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his Shield about his neck, in which he wore a Hart wavy in a field of silver, and on one side of the Hart a Tree, all which did signifie that he was found in a Forrest, and were the same Arms King Pepin bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the Lists, great was the clamour of the French, in joy of Valentine, the sound whereof the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued forth out of the City, to behold these Triumphant Jests. The Fryer having plaid his part among the Christians within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these Triumphs, addressed himself to take possession of the gates, which having gotten, there was no entrance again to be expected. King Pepin being made acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his men of War ready to relieve Valentine, if necessity required. Having now all things in readiness, the hour was at hand that the Jests should begin.



So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly couched their spears, and the first course proved so vallant, that their Spears shivered all in splinters: each Combatant perceiving valour to brandish on the top of his Helm, made out a second course, where Valentine got the better, for with his Spear (charged against the breast of the Admiral) he gave him such a strong blow, that he forced his spear quite through his body, insomuch that he fell from his horse stark dead, making a pitifull noise at his departure, wherefore the Pagans ran suddenly upon Valentine, and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a resolute courage put spurs to his Horse, and with his sword drawn, violently rushed through the thickest of the Pagans, and slew many of them, as he passed through them. King Pepin also, with his Host came up to the aid of Valentine, but he was so hard beset by the Pagans, that he was smitten from off his Horse, which Valentine elpyng came up to the rescue of the King, so that he hoisted him again.

The King perceiving himself delivered out of danger, called unto Valentine, and said: My Child, thou hast saved my life, which if the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battell grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City, when they came to the gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them, and placed the Ensigns and Standards of King Pepin on the Walls. The Pagans seeing King Pepins Colours displayed upon the walls, betook themselves to flight: in chase of them the Christians followed on so fast, that their shamefully ended their days. In this Battell were slain a 1000 Pagans, only by the means of Valentine, who bare himself so valiantly that day, that he was the death of four Hostes at the least. And thus by his prowess, the City was again restored to the Christians, for which deed, there was great triumph in all Christendom, but especially at Rome, so that all the Inhabitants round about, gave everlasting praise to Pepin King of France, and by the general applauses of the people, he was sacred Emperor, and Crowned by the Pope. King Pepin did many goodly actions in his time, administering Justice to all. And this hapned in the time of Pope Clement the fourth.



CHAP. IX.

How Haufray and Henry repined at the love the King did shew towards Valentine.

King Pepin having expelled the Pagans out of Rome, he took his way back again towards Orleans, and being there arrived, he was right joyfully welcomed by Bertha his Queen, with her little Son Charleman, and her fair Daughter Eglantine, and their joy appeared so much the more, for that Valentine whom she loved so dearly, was again returned home in safety. Being some few days rested from his weary labours, the Lady sends for Valentine, who accordingly came unto her, and when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance began thus unto him: Valentine, you above all the rest, are most welcome and well ought it so to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumphs, and report says, you were the only Champion, that drove the Pagans out of Rome. Valentine replied: Madam, I can hinder no man to speak what pleaseth him; but as for myself, I have done little deserving praise, but it hath pleased the King your Father to do me great honour, even so much, as all the days of my life I am not able to make the least part of recompence: and as he spake these words, Haufray and Henry, (two men composed of all envy) entered the Chamber of Balantine: and seeing him, began thus to speak: Valentine, what have you to do here in the Chamber of our Sister? it is no place for such Stragglers as you are: this poor belonefs is not to be born: no man knows of who you are; therefore we advise you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, least you dearly buy these your presumptions: Valentine hearing these words, answered: Wrong me not, for I entered not the Chamber of your Sister, to her dishonour: What though I be poor, and not known of whence I am, yet I am not so base, as to offer violence unto one descended from the blood of Kings: And further, I promise

mise and bow never to come near her Chamber again : and there withal departed, leaving the Lady mournful all alone.

Valentine hasted to the Palace, to wait upon the King at Dinner, where was in presence Haufray and Henry, and the Duke Millain Daugler, who likewise waited upon the King during dinner time. Dinner being finished, the King arose and called to Valentine, and in hearing of all his Nobles thus began to say : My Lords, here is Valentine, that hath well deserved at our hands, and that saved my life when I was in danger; therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good service towards me, I freely give unto him the Earldom of Clairmont of Avergne, and when I can bestow more upon him, he shall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thanks, saying, that he had heaped upon him more honours then he could any way deserve. Haufray and Henry hearing these words, grew greatly male-content, and at last Henry began to talk with his Brother on this manner : This found fellow, I perceive, grows in great favour with the King, and there must be some course taken to cross his designs : or else our overthrow will shortly follow upon it ; for (quoth he) you know well that the King hath no Sons but we two, and one little one (named Charlemain) which if our Father dye, may by our furtherance quickly be set beside the Kingdom. Again it is greatly to be feared, that this Valentine will support and uphold him against us. Therefore brother, I think it good to frame some plot against him, to bring him in displeasure with the King, and so far to prosecute our revenge against him, that if it be possible, we will not onely work his down-fall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleasure govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his speech, Haufray replied ; Let it be as thou hast said ; and that we may entrap his life, this shall be our plot : We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this up-start hath deflowered our Sister, and that we took him in bed with her, which when the King heareth, will surely put him to death. Being thus resolved, they daily fed their imaginations with the death of Valentine, while he (nothing mistrusting) served the King daily in all duty ; insomuch that the Kings love daily increased toward him ; and above all other most desired his company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to Orson his Brother, who all this while liued in the Forrest, so much feared of all men, that none durst approach nigh the wood. Daily complaints came unto the King from every side, and amongst the rest it chanced on a day, that a poore man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make complaint against a Wild-man in the woods, for one day, as I and my wife passed through the Forrest, carrying bread and other victuals, the wild-man came upon us, took it away, and eat it every bit, and more then that, he violently took my wife from me, and constrained her to yield unto his lawlesse lust. The King hearing out the poore mans tale, was disposed to make himself merry with his ill fortune, and thereupon asked the poore man this question: Whether griev'd him most, either the taking away of his victuals, or his wife: By my faith, said the poore man, at the wrong offered to my wife. Thou hast rightly said (quoth the King:) therefore I command my Treasurer to see restitution made unto thee, for the loss of thy victuals, but as for thy wife, thou must bare the burden thereof thy self.

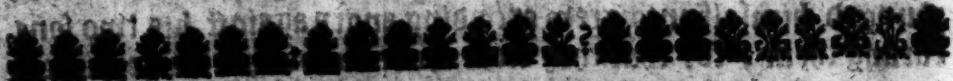
After this the King called all his Barons to assemble, and take some order to take this Orson, all which they did: and hereupon a Proclamation was sent unto all parts of the Realm, that whosoever he was, that could take this wild-man alive, or dead, should have a thousand marks for his reward. Hereupon assembled many worthy Knights to take this task in hand, but the King being one day in his Palace, in the midst of his Nobles, talking and debating who should be appointed to this business, Hafray (enemy unto Valentine) being there, said thus unto the King: Sir, here is Valentine, whom you have nourished, and advanced to high dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful love to our Sister Eglantine: He were fittest to set forward to try his valour, and let him be employed to fetch in this Wild-man, that is such a terror to the Inhabitants: and if by his valour he can vanquish him, then let him have Eglantine in Marriage, which is his desired wish. The King hearing these words of his Son, said: Away, for thy speech savoureth of nothing but envy. What though he be poore, of low birth, and found in a Forrest, yet I find him to me true, and trusty,

trusty, and of Gentile carriage, and to me seemeth to be both of a more noble parentage, than thou art: Leave off these thy malicious and bitter speeches against him; for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended of a more nobler lineage, then as yet to us appeareth. And I for my part (for the divers virtues that daily are seen in him) am willing that he go to my daughter when ever he please, for I am well assured, that no dishonour can be offered out of a branch of such a generous spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of Valentine, was sore displeased in heart, but letting a good face upon the matter, dissembled his countenance for that time, but it seemed Valentine well observed him, and at last brake forth into these words: Haufray, without any cause given on my part, ye have spoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I should undertake the fight and conquest of the Wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my days, and so your rebenge be accomplished upon me: Well, be it so, here before the King, I take a solemn Oath, that I will take the enterprize upon me, and find out the Wild-man, and having found him, I will fight with him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead carcass as a witness in the open field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me, as also, bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Widdelock, and how I came to be left an infant in the wood.

The King understanding well what danger Valentine had plunged himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two sons, cursing them, for that they were the cause of this dangerous enterprize: for he loved Valentine more then any, and at last called unto Valentine, and said: My Child, advise you well what you undertake, for with the Wild-man to fight is desperation it self, you cannot be ignorant how many valiant men, and worthy Champions, have by him been overcome: and others likewise of valiant account that have forsaken this Combat. Therefore I say, let not the evil words of a few malicious men, make you desperate in losing your life. For, my Child, it is far better to endure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted vertue) then to hazard ones life against such a monster, and no man.

Valentine replied, Pardon me (my Leige) for I will never re-
 voke my intended purpose; They call me fownd brat, which grie-
 veth my very soul; for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what
 place, but I rest determined, and so take my leave; for to morrow
 morning will I set forward to my intended enterprize. Having
 taken his leave, marvel not, though the fair Lady Eglantine made
 great lamentation for what had hapned, but the next morning by
 break of day, she called one of her maidens, and said; Go unto
 Valentine, and bid him come and speak with me before his depar-
 ture, bid him fear no danger of life, for I would fain take my
 leave of him. The Damosel did as the Lady commanded, and
 when she came to Valentine, she found him mounted on horse-
 back, and she bid her message unto him. He understanding her
 errand, said unto her, Damosel, I know the love to be great be-
 tween my Lady Eglantine and me, yet I would not wish her to be
 sore that would turn to her dishonour. But envy is of so great
 power, that it never leaves them whom it once possesseth. For cer-
 tain it is, that Haufray & Henry (Brethren to your Lady) have at
 me great and malicious hearts, and will pursue me, even unto
 death (if it be possible) wherefore fair Damosel, bave her this an-
 swer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no evil thereof;
 and further, that she hold me in excuse, that I refuse to come, and
 so farewell.



CHAR. XIII.

How VALENTINE Conquered his Brother ORSON,
 in the Forrest of Orleans.

Now is Valentine upon his journey to the Forrest, accompa-
 nied only with his Page; whether being come, he put his
 Helmet on his head, and sent him back again. So he rode forth
 all that day, seeking the Wild-man, but he could not find him, so
 the night drawing on, he descended from his horse, and tied him
 up

up unto a tree: having so done, he refreshed his body with such victuals as he had brought with him: and when he had eaten, & the day shut in, Valentine for fear betook him to a top of a tree, and there abode all that night. In the morning so soon as day appeared he looked round about, & at last espied his Brother Orson tuning through the Forrest: At length when he came to the place where Valentine had tyed his horse, the Wild man still drawing nearer unto him, wondzing at the beauty of the horse began to clasp him with his long nails, thinking to rouze up the courage of the horse, for he had never seen the like. The horse feeling the Wild mans nails scratching his side, began to sting and kick exceedingly, Valentine sitting in the top of a tree, noted the terrible shape of the Wild man, and began to be afraid, but calling on the Gods, he requested their aid against this Monster. Orson all this while was still busied in beholding this horse, and still offering him such injury with his nails, that the horse did nothing but kick and bite him. When Orson perceived the Horse to be too hard for him, he caught fast hold on the horse, that he thought to cast him over, and fight with him. Valentine perceiving his horse in danger to be slain, he cryed out aloud, and said, Wild man, leave my Horse, and stay but till I come down, and with me thou shalt have fighting enough. The Wild man hearing a strange voice, looked up into the tree, & spying there a man, made unto him divers signs with his hands and head to come down and he would pull him in peices. Valentine making all the haste he could, drew his sword, & leapt upon the Ground close by the Wild man; when Orson saw the sword, and that he offered to smite him therewith, he leaped and kept him from the stroke, but suddenly returned back again upon Valentine, and threw him unto the ground. Herewithal Valentine was very much discomfited, for he looked for no other than present death in that place, for he felt the strength of the Wildman so great, that he had no hope of escaping.

Being thus both Grovelling on the Ground, Valentine assaid divers times to have gotten Orson under him, but could not; when he saw that by strength there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed knife, & smote Orson deep into one of his sides: that the blood issued out abundantly, Orson feeling himself

wounded, all enraged, he gave such a screech, that the Woods echoed again at the sound thereof, but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted Valentine with his sharp nails, that he got him at such an advantage, that he threw him once more upon the earth, where lying they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last, Orson took the shield from about the neck of Valentine, and having got it, he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers colours thereon embayed: when he had looked his fill he cast it against the ground, and suddenly returning again to Valentine, with the violence of his nails and teeth, he brake in pieces both the ribs of his Armour, and his Habergeon also, smiting and beating him so sharply with his nails, that he made the blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold. Valentine feeling himself so sore wounded, after some Devotions used to the Gods, he made again upon Orson with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him, but Orson recoiling back, step'd onto a tree hard by, the which tree he pulled up by the roots, and made thereof a club, being thus prepared he made against Valentine, and striking at him, gave him such a blow, that he made him fall upon one knee; Valentine recovering again, laid about him fiercely, so there began again another dangerous fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the cause of this their fortunes. Orson was so cruel, and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed Valentine, had it not been for his sword, for he was sore afraid thereof because he had received a wound before by a knife. Long time they fought together, inasmuch as they both grew faint. In which tiredness both standing gazing on each other, Valentine looked wisely upon Orson, and said thus, *Wild man, wherefore dost not thou yield thy self unto me? Were thou best like a beast, having no knowledge of humane society, come thy way with me, and I shall make thee know both thy self and others, I will give unto the food of all sorts, and also cloath thee in apparel fitting humane shape.*

Orson understanding by signs that he would be good, fell down upon his knees, and stretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making unto him signs to forgive him, and he would commit himself under his command ever after, and with further signs

promised, that during his life, he would assist him both in body & goods. At his happening thus, it was great joy to Valentine, to see that he had conquered the Wild man, which to many Knights durst not neede withal: for by this only he had won himself more honour than any Knight that lived in France in those days. All this hard adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took Orson by the hand, and shewed him by signs, that he should go on before him if they were out of the Wood, for he would not trust him behind, and being out of the Wood, Valentine took off one of his Girts, and bound both his hands fast unto his body, that he should not attempt again to do him any hurt: and in this manner being bound, he mounted on Horse back, and led the Wild-man with him like a Beast, who never resisted, which was a thing most of all to be wondered at.



C H A P. XIV

Now Valentine having conquered Orson the Wild-man, departed from the Forrest towards Orleans, where as King Pepin was resident.

Valentine having conquered the Wild-man (as before bound) took his way towards Orleans, but you must imagine he could not reach thither in one day, wherefore the day being spent, he determined to lodge at the next town or village. Being come thither he thought there to take rest for that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the Wild-man to come along with Valentine, every man ran into his house, shutting up their doors, and for very fear durst not offer once to look out on him. Valentine perceiving them full of fears, cried out unto them, saying, Open your doors every man, and fear not, for we come onely for lodging: rest assured this, they would not give him succor: At last seeing neither intreaty nor threatenings would prevail, he swore most bitterly, that if they would not receive him into their houses to rest there that night,

night, he would let loose the *Wild* man amongst them, still he
 proceeded to intreat for lodging, but none would give it him. At
 last, as he had threatened, so he did, and letting loose the *Wild* man
 he made him signs how he should run against such a Gate, which
 was an *Irr*, the which he did, wrynging a post from out of the
 earth, he ran against the Gate, smiting it open with such violence,
 that they fell off the hooks upon the ground. Valentine seeing the
 Gate opened in this manner, entered the house, and the *Wild* man
 with him: But when they within saw the Gate broken down they
 all forsook the house, and ran out at the back door, leaving all to
 Valentine and his beast y *Guest*. Valentine perceiving them all
 fled, went to the Stable, and set up his horse, and dressed him: and
 Orson in the mean time went into the Kitchen, where there was
 Capons and divers other provisions of flesh upon a spit roasting at
 the fire. Valentine made signs to Orson, that he should turn
 the spit, but so soon as Orson understood his meaning, he set his
 horny talions upon the meat, and tore it from the spit, devouring
 it as greedily as a ravenous *Wolf*: when he had torn the meat
 in peices, he espyed a Caldron of water standing by, into which he
 put his head like a Horse, and drank water unmeasurably. Va-
 lentine perceiving him to be a thirst made signs unto him, that he
 should forsake the water, and he would give him *Wine*, and there-
 withal took a pot, and led him into the Seller: when Valentine
 had drawn the pot full of wine, he gave it unto Orson, who set
 it unto his mouth, and tasting the liquor, found it to be very good,
 drinking so freely thereof, that he drank out all the wine, & af-
 terward throw the pot against the Ground, making a sign unto
 Valentine to draw him more: Valentine fulfilled his signs, & fil-
 led him the pot again, but Orson espying befoze his sight a little
 hotel-dish he put the wine into it, and carried it into the Stable
 to Valentine's Horse: But Valentine perceiving that, made signs
 unto him, that his Horse drank nothing but water, yet Orson
 helped again by signs, that wine was a great deal better than
 water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the
 house, which here we will pass over, for the night was so far
 spent that rest were sifter for them, than meat. Valentine basted
 him to supper, making Orson to bear him company (after his
 kind)

kind) but Orson drank so freely of the wine that Valentine gave him, that he became drunk, and in the end got him to the fire; and fell fast asleep. Valentine seeing what had happened, said; Now do I perceive, that there is neither any strength, nor resistance in this wild-man, for if I would I could here suddenly end his days. But in regard he would make a further tryal of him, he punched against him with his foot so hard that it awaked him: being awaked, he made signs unto him, that there was people about the house; with that Orson suddenly arose as in a trance, and catching at a great log within the Chimney, he ran against the Gate of the house, that he made all shake again: at which sudden action, Valentine fell into a great laughter, which Orson perceiving, let all alone, and betook himself to his rest again. Valentine made unto him another sign, that he should fear nothing, for he would be his watch-man, but Orson would not sleep again, but with the log in his arms. And Valentine did as he before had promised, unto Orson, and watched all that night, fearing the inhabitants, lest that they should grow into an uprore, for they were so greatly possessed with fear, that they forsook their houses, and ran every one unto the Church, & all that night so tumbled the Bells backward, that ere the morning came, all the Village was filled with men of War.

Now the morning being come, Valentine betook him to his horse, leading Orson bound (as he did the day before) towards Orleans, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the Wild-man, ran every man into his house, shutting their doors, and getting up into their higher rooms, gazing out of their windows. Being entred the City, tydings came to King Pepin, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man: the King hearing hereof, was greatly Astonied, and at last said: Valentine, my child, in a happy hour wast thou born, blessed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the wood, for now I see thou art fortunate, and by thee are we delivered of our fears. Valentine rode through the City of Orleans, till he came at the Palace Gate of the King, and when the Porters saw Orson, they shut the Gates upon them, till Valentine with a loud voice said unto them, fear



not, but go tell the King, that I will chello him, and all his Court
 from the fury of this Wild-man, for I have made him so tame,
 that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the
 King what Valentine said, who commanded they should enter the
 Palace. When Valentine took Ursula by the hand and led him in
 to the Court. When Bertha and the fair Isabella heard that
 the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for
 fear. Valentine went up into the great Hall, where King Pepin
 sat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home.
 Amongst the rest Good Lady and Herr, who also made great
 show of love, but in heart wished the wild man had been his death.
 King Pepin and the rest of his Lords gazed on the Wild-man, in-
 so-much as the King said he is made of a paper mold, full of Ro-
 sure, and though now he seem rough, yet if he were clothed, he
 would become the shape of a right worthy Knight. Then Valen-
 tine

time said my Leige, it were requisite he were baptiz'd. It pleaseth me well (said the King) let it be done. So a Priest was appointed to baptize him: these were his Godfathers, King Pepin and D. Millin: Valentine, and the Dutche of Bourbon; So they called his name Orson. The baptism being solemnized, the King sat him down to dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cap. Then Orson was commanded into the Hall to see his behaviour: and being come, the King beheld him earnestly. Orson seeing the meat, took as much as he could grasp in his hand, and devoured it. Having eaten that he elypp'd one of the attendants that brought a Peacock to the Table, who coming neer unto him, snatched away the Peacock, and sat him down and devoured it most greedily. Valentine seeing his behaviour, made signs unto him that he did not well, whereat Orson seemed ashamed; but the King had let him alone, for he much delighted in his rudeness. Orson having devoured much meat, got a pot of wine and drank it off, throwing the pot to the ground. Night being come, Valentine was appointed to a fair Chamber, and a bed for Orson in the same, but as soon as ever he entered the Chamber, he laid him on the ground, and so fell asleep.



CHAP. XV.

How Haulfray and Henry took Counsel together to Murder Valentine in the Chamber of Eglantine.

Right glad and joyful was the fair Lady Eglantine, that Valentine had conquered the Wildman, insomuch that she sent him word to bring the Wildman man into her presence. Then Valentine took Orson by the hand, and led him to the chamber of Eglantine, where were assembled divers Ladies of honor to behold him; Orson being in the chamber, in a lauging humor leapt upon the bed, there making divers signs unto the Ladies, which highly pleased them, but his meaning they could not understand, at which

which they were right sorry. At last Valentine opened unto them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly kiss and play with some of them, whereat they looked one upon another and began to laugh. While this assembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of Eglantine, Haufray came to Henry and said thus unto him: Brother, you see how the honor and credit of this foundling increaseth, which much eclipseth our honor, and we must seek some remedy for it. It is true (said Henry) wherefore let us lay some plot to cut him off. Then said Henry, hearken what I shall say, Valentine is now with our Sister, and we may have fit occasion to kill him in her Chamber, when we have done, we will inform the K. that we found him in her bed. According to their determination they put it in action, and rushed into the Chamber of Eglantine. As soon as Haufray was entred, he roughly thus began with Valentine. Dishonoural man, now shalt thou know the price of thy inconstancy, purchasing daily great dishonor unto the K. our Father, by abusing our Sister Eglantine, and leading her affections to work your pleasure on her, insomuch as by thee she is made unfortunate. But sith the King hath been told hereof, & he regardeth not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take vengeance of thee in our own persons. And Haufray lift up his fist and calling him Traitor, smote Valentine on the face, so that the blood ran out of his mouth, Henry on the other side came to him, and with a Glave thought to have smitten Valentine to the earth. Orson perceiuing they were in earnest, leapt out, and gave Haufray such a stroke with his rough hand that he felled him, & after ran to Henry, and girded him so between his arms, that if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased his wrath, he had destroyed them both at once.

At this became an outcry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamor, but when they understood that Orson dealt so violently with the Kings Sons, they would have killed him with their swords. Valentine perceiuing their fury to arise, drew his sword, & swore, that if any of them offered violence to Orson, he would run them thorow: this said, he made a sign to Orson to be still, and so he rested himself for that time; Haufray and Henry went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against Valentine and the Wild-
man.

man, saying: Father, in an evil hour was this Valentine born, for he hath brought hither the Willdeman, only to work our overthrow, and if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal person. The King hearing this complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this answer, that as for Orson, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, & not come abroad without leave given him, & as for Valentine, the King sent for him to demand the cause of this disorder. Valentine being come before the King, began to say on this manner: O dead Sovereign, I was in the Chamber of your daughter Eglantine accompanied with others other Ladies, that desired to see Orson. I know not how nor why your two sons Haufray and Henry, violently entered the chamber, charging me that I had abused the body of your fair daughter, moreover, in the heat of their violence used against me, Haufray smote me on the face, that the blood issued, and Henry lifting up his Sword, thought to have taken away my life. All which, when Orson saw, he suddenly made towards them, and smote them both to the earth, and therewithal began this uprore. The King hearing this tale, said: And is this true that you have said. Upon my life (said Valentine) all that I have spoken is true. Then said the King, Orson hath done nothing but right, and that which in duty he ought to do. And as for you Haufray and Henry, I see right well that you are even swollen full of malice against Valentine: wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no ill against him, for here I vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for I have made many trials of his love and faithfulness towards me: and with this answer, Haufray and Henry departed, although sorrowful in heart, that they could not work their wills upon him.

Then being gone, Valentine stayed still in the Kings Hall amongst the other Nobles that were there assembled, and Orson went here and there round about the Palace, at last he came unto the Kitchen where the Cooks were making ready supper, and being there, he spyed two Capons, ready for the fire, Orson made towards the Capons, and let upon them, eating them up now like a hungry Dog. The Cook seeing him eat up his Capons, took a Ruffel lying by him, and gave Orson such a blow

that he made him bow therewith. Orson feeling the blow, stooped down, and took the Cook up between the legs, throwing him down upon the Ground, and being down, he so belaboured the poor Cook, that he had well nigh beat him to death. Things was brought unto the King, that Orson had slain the Cook, and none durst come near him.

The King hearing hereof, willed him to be brought before him and made signs unto him, that he should be hanged: but Orson fetched the Vessel, and made signs how the Cook had beaten him therewith, wherefore the King commanded that none should offer him any injury. So after that, Valentine taught him manners, how he should behave himself. And so they both lived quietly in the Court of King Pepin.



CHAP. XVI.

How Duke Savary sent unto King Pepin for aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his will.

It chanced that not long after the coming home of Valentine and Orson into the Court of King Pepin, that Duke Savary sent certain Messengers to King Pepin, which said to him on this manner: Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you, to request your aid against a false and accursed Wagon (called the Green Knight) who hath besieged his Confiner, and intendeth to have his Daughter by force of arms against his will, notwithstanding all the resistance that he and his three sons can make against him. The King having heard this Message, made this answer: We agree to give him all the aid we can. He had no sooner given answer unto these Messengers, but there was come unto the Court another Messenger from Lyons, who after his duty done unto the King, said thus unto him: Renowned King, assemble your men of War in readiness, and conduct them towards Lyons.

Lyons, for the Almains are coming against you in great numbers, their whole force consisting of above an hundred thousand fighting men. The King hearing this sudden news, was much troubled, in mind: and presently called before him the Arch-Bishop of Rhemes, the Duke Myllon Dangler, Garvais and Sampson, these with others of his Nobles being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and withal craved their Counsel what was best to be done, whether to go to Aquitain to succor Duke Savary, or to Lyons, to resist the Almains, whereunto Millon Dangler made this answer: The Duke I confesse deserbeth to be succoured but yet in two extreames, let us chuse the les: Therefore I judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present danger: and for the Duke, he must be content to take our present affairs for answer: so Generally it was concluded to go for Lyons.

With these words the Messenger that came from the Duke of Savary departed, and carried these tidings with him to Aquitain, which made him very sorrowful to hear it, because the Green Knight had very strongly assailed him. Now here gentle Reader I let you understand, for the better ordering our proceeding, that this Green Knight here spoken of, was brother to Ferragus, the Giant that kept the Lady Bellyfane in his Castle, who was the distressed mother of these two Infants, born in the Wood called Valentine and Orson, as is before declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from King Pepin, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions, that all of what condition soever, should be ready armed against the morrow after, for he would then go out upon the Green Knight, and fight with him in the field, all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both armies met, as well Horse as Foot, the Baggage presented themselves in multitudes: the Green Knight behaved himself so valiantly, that the first encounter, with his Banner, at two blows he slew two valiant Knights. Duke Savary perceiving him to be so warlike a General, came up to encounter him, and meeting, they assailed each other, but the Duke was ill-advised to adventure his body against the Green Knight, because it was ever peremptorily reported of him, that he should never be

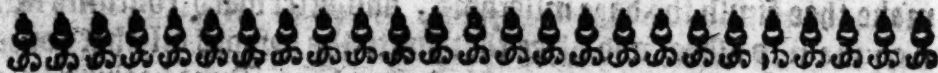
overcome of any, except he were a Kings Son, and such a one as had never sucked the breasts of any woman. But the Green Knight was herein deceived, for he thought it impossible any such man should be upon the face of the earth: but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you shall understand. Let us now return to the two valiant leaders, who fought long and fiercely, but the Duke ventured so far into the enemies hands, that when he had thought to have retired: he could not, for he was round begirt with such multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken prisoner, and brought back unto the Green Knight, whose Ransom could not be Granted for any Gold or Treasure. His men at Arms perceiving the Duke surprized, returned to Aquitaine, sore lamenting the loss of their good Duke. And his three Sons, Garin the elder, Anselme and Garin the younger, made great moan to see the hard hap of their father, led captive among the Pagans.

The Sons having heard their fathers, in comes Pezon his Daughter with this lamenting out-cry, *Alas: In an ill hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrel, and yet there is one thing more troublesome my discomfited soul than all the rest, which is this, that my father should be held captive in the hands of his Enemies, the only way to bring his aged years with sorrow to the Grave. Thus (dear father) your love to me is the only cause of all these disastrous chances.* Thus fell Pezon into a dangerous fit of discontent, inasmuch, as with this bitterness of sorrow, he had well-nigh finished her days, had not the rest of the Ladies attendant, laboured to comfort her in this great sorrow, whereby she was almost overcome.

Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with sorrow, the Green Knight triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavilion, and having him there, began to rebuke him in this disdainful manner: *Woe, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have power over thy life: this that I speak thou canst not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred lips: either give me thy Daughter Pezon to wife, and so redeem thy life, or else I will have her against thy will, leaving her amongst rough Mountains, and there*

these royal Crowns bet Dusen of those craggy Pansions,
 The Duke hearing these proud menaces, began thus to reply:
 Proud and insolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give
 consent that thou have my Daughter except thou also subscribe to
 be baptized. The Green Knight hearing him say so, replied: Urge
 me no further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet: Wherefore
 once again I tell thee, except thou yeild to my demand I will first
 make thee finish thy days miserably, and afterward consume all
 Aquitaine so ashes, and after that put to the Sword all that come
 in my way, men, women, and Children. The Duke hearing this
 Pagan thus resolute, began again on this manner: Pagan, the
 Gods protect me from thy cruelty, for I had rather rely on their
 power than thine. The Green Knight hearing him say so, began
 wisely to set his eye upon him, & marking his unwanted lamenta-
 tions, began a fresh with him on this manner: grave Duke, leave
 off these thy sad laments, and hearken unto my relation and reso-
 lution also, and this it is: I am not ashamed to let thee under-
 stand, that thy Daughters beauty hath enthralled me, and there-
 fore I will retail my threatened sentence of death against thee:
 Whoev' of which Captivate affections towards the Daughter, I am
 forced to yeild to this condition, that thou shalt find out a Knight
 within the space of six months, to encounter me, and if so it hap-
 pen that by strength of Arms he conquer me, I will by all the
 Pleasens, to send thee back again into thy own country, without
 waiting any of the same: but if it happen that I prove conquer-
 ed by that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resign thy fair
 Daughter into my hands, to be my lawful wife. These Articles
 being produced, the Duke willingly agreed therunto, so the Truce
 was accordingly proclaimed, and so ended the first part of the
 story. These Agreements thus concluded, the Green Knight gave
 leave that Duke Saracen should depart, upon Conditions, that he
 should swear to keep covenants, not only for the present, but du-
 ring his life. The Duke being thus delibered, made his repair to
 Aquitaine, whither being come, he caused open proclamation to be
 made of those conditions, whereunto he had before subscribed con-
 cerning his said Daughter: and with that, the Truce taken for the
 space of six months. His Councillores hearing what was past, ad-
 vised

bised him to dispatch messengers into all Lands, with these advertisements following: If there were any Knight whatsoever, that durst encounter the Green Knight, for the love of the beauteous Lady Fezon, he should lay down his gage and so be answered. These Letters were sent into twelue Christian Lands: what followed you shall better learn by the succeeding Chapter.



CHAP. XVII.

How divers Knights arrived at Aquirain, at a solemn Just there holden, to bear away the Love of the beauteous.

Lady Fezon.

During this time of the Truce, between Duke Savary & the Green Knight, Pepin King of France had taken his journey against his enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty Host of men, being come before the City with all his forces, he set upon a K. called Lamparris, who had also brought into the field 4000 fighting men. This Lamparris was King of Syres, Holland, and Friezland, with the Countrey of Monemarch, in the which stood a very strong defended City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King Pepin getting knowledge hereof, strongly begirt this City with a siege, insomuch that at last they were constrained to yield or suffer famishment, but resolving upon the safety of their lives, they yielded their City, which City the King bestowed upon Guy, Marshal of France. The wars being ended, Pepin returned again into France, with all his warlike Souldiers: Being arrived at Paris, it was told him that Duke Savary had taken truce with the Green Kt. and the manner how, whereat the K. laughing heartily, said in the presence of his Barons: who is he amongst you that would win fair Fezon for his Love, must take upon him a Combate against the Green Knight, whom if he conquer & overcome, the Duke will not onely give him his Daughter, but one half of his possessions: and that this is true, behold Letters here written

written with his own hand. Every one of these worthy Knights right diligently viewed these Letters, yet none of them durst undertake the enterprise, save onely Valentine, who perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King: Right dear Sovereign, if it please you to give me leave, I will adventure my strength upon that Green Knight, and will gladly undertake the task committed Again, I have a great desire to leave France, for I long to take in hand some tedious journey, to find out the Mother that bear me, and from whence I am descended. Valentine (said the King) take thou no care of whence thou art, for it resteth in my power to make thee greater than any man within my Court, and for that I find thee willing to go to Aquitaine, I freely give thee leave, but on condition, that after thou hast tryed thy Man-hood with the Green Knight, thou return again, if thou escape with life. Valentine yielded to the King in his demand, and so taking leave, he shortly after prepared to his journey.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go into Aquitaine, she was very sorrowful, and at last in the midst of tears sent for Valentine to come unto her. Valentine promised the Messenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed, and being come, she burst forth into tears, saying: Ah Valentine, now I do well perceive that all my joys are at an end, and that you are resolved to leave this Countrey of France. Ah, would to God it might be my good hap to go with you, for there is not a man living whom I hold so dear as you, and (were not I curbed by my high birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou mayest the better perceive my true intent, take thou here the keys of all my Treasure, and take what pleaseth thee, for there is great store, and the Gods give thee succour in all thy Knightly enterprises.

Lady (quoth he) Silver and Gold need I none, but that which most of all distempereth my unquiet Breast, is, that I cannot learn of my descent. Moreover: one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which is, that I bear upon one of my Shoulders a Cross, and it is of the colour of most pure Gold, of which sign I know not what to gather, but resolve thus, never to rest in any place, until such time as I have found out the truth of my

Patience, and to love a Lady, I take my leave, earnestly request-
ing you to stop the current of these British tears: and withal I
vow, that if I find my birth answerable to the Majesty from
whence you are descended, to take you as my only choice to make
foraking all other. On the other side, having found out my birth,
and perceiving it not answerable to yours, I would not be your
Husband for all the wealth in the world. For malicious tongues
in time to come will say, where are the Brethren, Sisters, or Co-
zens of this runnagate, that hath presumed to match himself unto
the Daughter of our mighty King Pepin; having spoken all these
words, he departed, leaving Aglantine full of grief. But when
he had some little time sat still, he could not be satisfied but of-
fered to follow him whithersoever he went, and in conclusion
brought him on some part of his way, being accompanied with
others of the Nobility. Valentine being departed, Haufrey and
Henry were right glad hereof, secretly conspiring how to bring it
to pass, that Valentine and his Brother Orson (who went along
with him) might by treacherous villany come unto an untimely
death.

CHAP. XXVIII

How Haufrey and Henry accompanied with a Troop of
their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away
the life of Valentine.

VALentine & Orson having taken their leave of King Pepin,
addressed themselves for Aquitaine. Being on their way,
Haufrey and Henry consulted together (joining to their aid a
third who was Cousin to them both) how they might lie in Am-
bush to let upon Valentine and Orson, to work their destruction:
which number was about thirty strong able men. This plot
being thus come to perfection: charge was given to these War-
like men, that if they could not overcome Valentine and his Bro-
ther

ther Orson to death, yet they should lay hold on Valentine, and keep him safe. The place appointed where this should be done, was a very large and great forrest, through which Valentine must needs pass. Not long after the ambush was pitched, it so chanced, that Valentine came riding along the forrest, with Orson running by his side, swifter then an Horse, who coming near the place, where these armed men lay, forth steps their Captain (called Grygar) accompanied with all his Troop, with their weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized Valentine on the sudden, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce Traitor sent him such a mortal blow, that his sword pierced quite through his Armour, and entred into the flesh, insomuch as the blood followed the blow; and withal, uttered forth these unwelcome words: Valentine,



either yield thy self captiue, or receiue thy Death. Valentine, as a man all amazed, was somewhat moved at the sight of his own blood,

blood, and considering how he was encompassed with a multitude of his enemies, recommending his innocency unto the Gods, and at last spoke on this manner: My Lordes (speaking to Halfray and Henry) I see well that you have determined my days by Treason, and that without cause on my part given, but yet I assure you, that before I yield my self into your hands, or before this eares Sun be set, I shall send some of you here present into such a Country, that you shall scarcely ever return again to bring tidings of your Country. And therewithal drew forth his sword, and gave the first that encountered him such a blow upon the head, that he clave it even to his teeth, and there he lay dead: After that he betook him towards the rest, with such violence, that at every stroke one fell before him.

Orson perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouse himself, and with his rough hands and piercing talons, he rent and tore all that came in his way, and so bit them with his teeth, that they fell graveling upon the ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine seeing his brother Orson thus bestir himself, held up his bloody sword, defending himself, and offending his enemies so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight: Grygar their Captain, perceiving all his men thus pittifully killed and overcome, cryed out with a loud voice on this manner. Valentine, yet I wish thee well, or else look for nothing but death. Valentine hearing these insulting words, made toward Grygar, and in a fierce and furious manner assailed him; but being too forward, he plunged himself into the throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off Orson with their long spears. Being thus begirt about with enemies, he still behaved himself so valiantly, that not any man durst lay hold upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overcome with multitudes, and being not able longer to wield his sword, they took him, bound him, and carry'd him away with strong hands. Orson perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous noise, but he could not overtake them, for they rid away swifter than he could run, and having at last lost the sight of them, knew not which way he were best to take after. Grygar the Captain commanded

manded them to follow after Orson, and to bring him back, either alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-ran them, and so escaped. Those that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forrest, kept by a notable Thief, who was Cousin German to Grygar; Valentine being entred the Castle Gate, they entreated him evilly, conveyed him to a deep Dungeon which grieved him to the heart, insomuch that his grief brast out into these words: Alas, now is that come upon me, which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest enemies, and those that have ever sought my life, and utter destruction. Farewel Noble King Pepin, for I fear I shall never see thee more, and that which most of all bereth me, that thou never shalt understand the truth of my death, for the very stench of this ugly Dungeon doth even stop my breath. Farewel Orson too, for thou hast already suffered death for my sake, and more could no man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my natural Brother. Farewel my sweet Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for now I must be without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark pit, whilst his enemies determine what shall be done to him: some were of opinion to put him to death, others, that he should be committed to a perpetual imprisonment. But Grygar being Lord over the rest, would not yield he should be put to death, but rather to keep him in prison till Haufray and Henry have received knowledge of all their proceedings. Having thus set down their resolution, they determined to take their journey towards Paris, where the King then lay, to meet with Haufray and Henry, who entertained them Royally, being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by Treason. Now understand, that Orson all that night was fain to rest within the wood, lying down at the foot of a Tree. The morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris also, never resting till he came into the presence of King Pepin: Being come thither, by signs and tokens he shewed the manner of the taking of Valentine, but yet for all the pain he made, Grygar was arrived at the Court before him. Haufray and Henry were much grieved that Orson had escaped, but all their com-

fort was, he could not speak, thinking thereby to escape from all mistrust; but their hopes were all laid in the dust, as hereafter will appear.

The next day the two Brethren had appointed that Grygar should return in all haste to the Castle, to put Valentine to death; but see how it came about, that all their counsels were quite overthrown: for Orson (as before is said) came unto the Kings Palace that morning, and growing towards Dinner time, the tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights, came in, and every man took his place. The King being set, and casting his eyes abroad, suddenly espied Orson, whom when he beheld, he thought, by him, that Valentine was not far off, but it fell out contrary. Orson ran through the hall, making a lamentable noise, and knocking his breast in most hideous and fearful manner, which made the King into ten thousand fears, and all the rest, who beheld this lamentable spectacle. Orson ran again along by the Table, looking very fiercely on every man, and making many fearful signs. Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted upon the Traitor Grygar, who espying Orson hung his head in his bosome. Orson having once got the sight of him, ran furiously upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroak, that he smote off one of his ears: After he began to lay upon his face, in such manner that he put out one of his eyes, and broke one of his teeth. Grygar being thus wounded, began to cry out for help, but Orson hearing him make such an uproar, ran again upon him, and gave him such another stroak, that he felled him unto the earth, overthrowing tables, meat, and all that stood before him; which made all the beholders into admiration: and had he not been rescued by a valiant Prince that then sat at Board, he had never gone from that place alive: which Prince having rescued him, began to say unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, consider into what danger this man is fallen by the fury of this wild-man: and either let him dye for this presumptuous fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, replied, we will consider the cause, and as we find it, so will we proceed against him. Biting him hither before us, that we may question the cause of this his fact. Orson was brought before the King, and be

demanded how he durst presume so far into the presence of his Majesty? Orson presently answered by signs, how that they had slain Valentine in the Forrest, and that he would be revenged for his death, on that inhumane Traitor Grygar, and withal closed his fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. As Pepin perceiving by his action, the course of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this wild-man hath challenged Grygar, to fight with him, therefore tell me your opinions what is best to be done in this case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this Wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights here assembled: therefore let every man freely speak, for I much doubt some hidden secret to lye herein, and for my part I could willingly give consent that it should be tryed forth by combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the verdict that the King had passed. So the Battell was determined, and Grygar was brought before the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the Wild-man: Grygar hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful and sad, and not without cause: for he fore-saw hereby, that his treason would come to light, and therewithal cast an ill-favoured eye on Haulray. Henry perceiving Grygar stand so amazed, said: Grygar, fear not, for I promise thee, howsoever it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our father the King, for we will work your peace assuredly, so that thou wilt swear never to repeat the fact: yea, (quoth Grygar) I well perceive how the case will go with me, I must suffer a reproachful death for your sake. Having thus said, he left Henry, and returned unto the King: saying: Mighty King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous task, the reason chiefly moving me, is, that inasmuch that it is not man against man, whereby a Knight may win honour, but a wild savage to encounter with man, and that man no Knight. I think I may safely (so your Grace be pleased) refuse the Combat. Nay (quoth the King) no excuse in this case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not only by my advise, but also by the counsel of all my Barons, and the reason moving us to grant it, was, that treason long-lying hid, might come

come to fight: Grygar hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into despair, but Haufray being there present, comforted him again on this manner: Doubt not, for you have equity on your part: and besides, I will see you well armed in all points, fitting your knightly race.

When Orson gathered by his wonted signs, that he should fight with this Traitor, he was right glad, and withal made shew unto the King, Valentine was dead, whereat the King grew monstrous sad, and said would Orson have been upon the back of Grygar, but that the King commanded him to be taken away, making signs unto him, that he should strike no more, till the time they should meet for the tryal of the truth. Again, the King called unto Grygar, to make hast to arm himself: Grygar loath to venture his life upon so uncertain ground, began once again to speak unto the King, saying: Most dread Sovereign, I have been a long servitor about your person both in war and peace, but you reward me not accordingly, inasmuch as you compel me to fight against a man, that hath neither sence, reason, nor, in truth, humane shape: Grygar (said the King) if the truth be on your side, you need not fear, for you shall enter into the field well armed, and as for Orson, he shall adventure upon thee altogether unarmed. Again, you shall be well mounted on Horse-back, he on foot, nor shall he bear any weapon. The right, you say, is on your side, wherefore maintain that right, and shew your valour, for the sentence of Combat may not be recalled.



CHAP. XIX.

How Orson and Grygar fought together, and how Orson returning Victor, caused Grygar to confess the Treason, who was afterwards, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon.

The place of Combat being appointed, Orson attended in readiness for his enemy: in the end, Grygar being well armed by Haufray and Henry, took his leave of them on this wise: My Lords, in your cause I am delivered over to death, and will

the day wherein I began this enterprize. Hold thy peace (said Henry,) for I will defend thee from the sentence of my Father, and work thy safety, so thou wilt be secret.

Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his Horse, went towards the Palace Gate, where this Combat was to be effected: the hour being come, the King repaired to the window to behold the Combat: All the Nobles in the Court being assembled, the Judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either part. So Grygar being entered the Lists, he espied Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying:

Wiltain, thou hast offered me great wrong, in putting out one of my eyes, but e're I part, I will make thee acknowledge that wrong: and that thou hast falsely accused me to the King. Orson perceiving wherunto his proud speeches tended, showed him his nails, gnashing his teeth together at him: wherewith Grygar suddenly caught his Spear within his rest, and ran upon him. Orson eluding the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his mark, and ran his Spear fast into the ground: Orson taking this advantage, suddenly returned back again, seized the Spear into his own hands, and having hold thereof, gave his enemy such a stroke therewith, that he astonished him. Grygar feeling in the fury of his stroke, set spurs to his horse, and rode like a mad man about the field: Orson ran after him with a grinning countenance, making signs to the King, that he would e're long force him to yield unto him. Grygar fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these words: Ah Haufray, for thy cause and sake I am thus delivered over to death. Long and tedious was the fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the Wild man.

At last Orson cast away his Spear, and came close to Grygar, in such manner, that he caught his horse fast by the neck, making him so mad and furious, that he overthrew his rider to the earth, and with the fall thereof he lost his Shield. Orson eluding the Shield, took it up, and put it upon his own back: after he came unto Grygar's Horse, and gat upon him, riding round about the field, and making ill-favoured signs and tokens, insomuch, as all the beholders there present, stood as men dismayed. Amongst

the rest, the King himself appeared very sorrowful, and at last began thus to speak: My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this sight will grow, but it is my opinion, that there is treason smothered, and not yet come to light. Orson having now a great while ranged about the field on horse-back after his enemy, at last forsook his horse, and encountered Grygar on foot, insomuch that he lent him such a blow that he smote him to the earth, afterward he leaped upon him, and disarmed him of his weapons: then the next blow he struck, he smote off one of his arms: next on the body he gave him such a wound, that it cut him even to the reins of the back. Grygar having received all these wounds, cryed out most pitifully, insomuch that every one requested he might have a Priest to confess him of his sins. The guard that was appointed for the field, hearing these outcries, sent out a worthy knight to demand what he would have done, unto whom Grygar said; Sir, bring me before the Kings Majesty, and before him and the rest of his assembly I shall reveal the Treasons whereof I am guilty, from point to point effectually.



CHAP. XX.

How Grygar being vanquished by Orson, confessed his Treason to King Pepin; and how Haufray and Henry had been only plotters thereof, against the worthy Valentine.

At last Grygar was brought before the King, who asked pardon for his high offence, and in the presence of all the beholders, told him, that the onely actors in this Traiterous plot, were Haufray and Henry his Sons, and by their means he had taken Valentine and put him in prison, and there meant (in secret manner) to have put him to death. The King having heard out his Tale, and perceiving the whole truth of this plot against Valentine, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came unto. The King having thus given sentence against

against G. ygar, called for his horse, and being mounted, made all
hast possible unto the Wyson where Valentine lay. Orson per-
ceiving the King in person would undertake such a journey, ad-
vised himself to run along by the Kings horse, leading him the
way, and making many signs of joy and gladness, all the way he
went. The King marking well all the wild-mans behaviour, often
spoke unto his Loyds in this manner: My Loyds, it is wonderful
that this Wild-man should bear such an ardent affection towards
Valentine; and besides, it strikes me into a thousand imaginations.
Now you must know, that the King had great cause, even to love
this Wild-man, for that he was his Natural Nephew, though as
yet not revealed, neither was the time yet come, to bring it to
light, till that by Clerimond (Sister unto the Countess) it
should be made manifest: for at that time Clerimond had a Castle,
and in it a Head of Wyas, composed by Pegromant, which head
told unto Clerimond all that should happen unto her all her life;
and also, all that ever she had done in her fore-past time. Besides,
this same head was composed by such wondrous Magick Arts,
that it should never leave off speaking, until the Nob'est Knight
in the World should enter the Castle, and then the Head utterly to
give over, and never to speak more.

This Magical Spell fell out upon Valentine, whom that fair
Lady Clerimond shall take to Husband, and so; whom he shall en-
dure a world of miseries, as (God willing) in the succeeding His-
tory you shall understand. So leave we this, and return back a-
gain to King Pepin, where before we left him. King Pepin goeth
on his Journey towards the Forrest, to take the life of Valentine,
and Orson being with him, brought him unto the very Castle,
wherein he was clapt up. Being come to the Gates thereof, the
Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates, for so they were
commanded by the residue within the Castle, upon pain of life.
The King perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his
Attendants to enter by force, and so they did. Being gotten within
the Castle, they seized upon all the seditious Traitors, and bound
them fast in chains, having so done, they went into the Dungeon
where Valentine lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King.
Valentine espying the King, fell upon his knees, yielding him thou-

sands of thanks, for that extraordinary kindness shewed to him, in delivering him out of a hell of darkness, and fear of death. The Barons also that attended the King, welcomed him with great joy and gladness, telling to him all that had hapned, and how that Orson had fought with the Traitor Grygar, in his quarrel, and overcame him: Valentine hearing thereof, embraced Orson. Afterward, the King commanded that all the Traitors should be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto Valentine; Valentine, seeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculously delivered out of the hands of thine enemies, I would advise thee to abide with me: but he replied; O dead Sovereign, pardon me, for I will never return again, till I have found out the Parents, of whence I am descended, and so humbly I take leave of your Majesty, and ever rest (only this excepted) at your command and service. So here leave we King Pepin, and onely look upon Valentine and Orson, who are taking their way towards Aquitain, to fight with the Green Knight, a man feared of all men: for I must call to remembrance that of which I told you before, that he should never be banquished by any, save only by a Kings Son that never sucked woman. Being come to Aquitain, the people flocked from all parts to behold the rough and unmanly shape of Orson: but Valentine seeing their folly, made him a Jacket of steel to put upon him: when Orson had it on his back, he was much offended thereat, and would have thrown it away, but that he much feared Valentine, and would do any thing that he commanded.

Orson having his steel Jacket upon his back, looked much upon himself, and at last became proud thereof, and set his countenance according to his heart. Now as they were riding on their way, Valentine espied a fair Squire, making much lamentation; Valentine beholding him well, said thus unto him: Friend, what apleth you to shed these tears, have you sustained any wrong either by man or Beast? Tell me what may be the cause, and I promise you the best of my power, to relieve your distressed case: Alas (said the Squire) thereof I make no doubt; but know this, that the cause of my laments, is the loss of a most kind and gentle Master, and a man of the greatest valour in Christendom. How have you lost him (quoth Valentine?) Sir, as he was travelling to-

towards Aquitain, to fight with the Green Knight, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the world (called Fezon) which Lady it is not possible for any one to have, except first he overcome in single Combat the Green Knight. Divers valiant Knights have there miscarried: and when he conquereth them, he causeth them to be hanged on a Tree: and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, yielding no shew of mercy towards any. Is all this true (quod Valentine) that thou hast told me. Why then! sure he is some devil in mans shape, that doth such strange exploits: But towards Aquitain am I journeying, to try my fortune against him, for I have heard much of that Lady Fezon. Ha Sir (quod the Squire) go not thither, to lose your life upon such a Devil. Squire, said Valentine I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous Green Knight: but if I can escape him I will first talk with the Lady Fezon, and take her advertisement.

Orson gathering some understanding of their talk, made signs unto Valentine that he might fight with the Green Knight, and that he would make love to the Lady Fezon, whereat Valentine laughed heartily. By this time, think them to be come near to the City of Aquitain, standing upon a hill; and meeting with an old man, he questioned with him, what City that was before him. Harry (quod he) it is Aquitain. Now tell me (said Valentine) where resteth the Green Knight? Why Sir (said he) without the City, I think you are going to fight with him. I (quoth Valentine.) Ah Sir (said the old man) undertake not so foul a folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and stand thou on this little hill, and I will shew thee above forth famous Knights hanging on a Tree whom he hath overcome. And so there is now but fifteen days to be accomplished, and then the Duke of Aquitain must part with his fair Daughter Fezon, to his great grief, and the overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father (quoth Valentine) the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoken these words, but there came another ancient man of fourscore years of age, in the habit of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandinot, Squire to the distressed Bellysant, and he it was that led his Lady Bellysant into the Castle of Ferragus the Giant, as before we have declared; Valentine espying him, demanded of him

whence he was, and whence he came. Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, I cannot
 tell, for I could not enter into the City, for reason of a
 Madman whom I had fought with a Siege, neither could I come
 to deliver the message on which I was sent, wherefore I thought
 it my safest course to return. Pilgrim (quod Valentine) what think-
 est thou of the Green Knight, is it not possible he should be over-
 come? So (said the Pilgrim, I advise you not to follow the
 enterprize:) for if there were a whole hundred of you, he would
 see the end of you all. Father, whither go you, said Valentine: Sir,
 I take my readiest way to Paris, for I have a Message to King Pe-
 pins, from a Sister of his named Belysant that long hath been ban-
 nished from Constantinople wrongfully, and now is the good Lady
 in the house of a Giant, that keepeth her, and useth her honourably,
 intending to know King Peps mind, whether he be consenting to
 these wrongs done unto her, for he well knoweth she is a vertuous
 Lady, and for her sake, offereth to put himself in single Combat
 with the Emperour of Greece, for that he hath so wrongfully ban-
 nished her. Palmer (quod Valentine) I pray thee to return back
 again with me to Aquitaine, for thither am I going to fight with
 the Green Knight: If the Gods give me victory against him, I will
 accompany thee into France, for I shall tell thee, only for the love
 I bear unto King Pepin, undertake I this fight, for he hath been
 means of my preservation and as a Father unto me. Wherefore to
 him I dedicate all my labours, and rest wholly at his command.
 Sir (quoth Blandiman) to this motion will I never consent, for
 my Lady hath put me in trust to dispatch her affairs, and I will
 discharge the duty of a trusty servant towards her, and so taking
 my leave, I commend you to the protection of the Gods, the Pal-
 mer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without
 cause, but he wist not why, for this was the man that had born
 a part of his Mothers exile. Well, Valentine also took on his
 journey, and after some few days, came near to the City of A-
 quitaine. Valentine beheld the City very earnestly, and passing
 on, he espied a pleasant fountain, thither he went, and alighting
 from his Horse, laid him down under a tree, to refresh his tired
 Limbs, and Orson was his Keeper all the while he slept: Soon
 he awaked and prepared himself to take Horse again, but suddenly
 there

there arrived at the same fountain, a most courageous knight, proud, and of so haughty a stomach, that he was called the proud knight, and withal so fierce and resolute, that he never all the days of his life asked question of any man, yet if he whom he met loved him not, he presently killed him. This proud knight came to the fountain, and Valentine beholding him, said never a word, and Orson also, gazed fiercely upon him. The proud knight was angered in his heart, and approached near unto Orson, and gave him such a blow, that the blood issued out of his mouth; Orson feeling the blow smart, suddenly took him and threw him to the earth under him and presently, espying a knife at the knight's girdle, smote him therewith into the body so deep that he was nothing but blood. The knight feeling himself wounded, cried out aloud, whereupon Valentine coming in, rescued the knight out of Orson's hands, and said: Fair knight, you have offered great wrong to smite a poor, defenceless man on this rude manner, who can speak never a word: With that the proud knight began thus roughly to answer Valentine: Proud Discreant, why then dost thou not salute me? and therewith drew forth a Glabe, thinking to have smitten him; Valentine seeing the blow, drew forth his sword, and strook at the proud knight with such violence, that he strook him dead, and said unto him: Hereafter learn thou to salute men in more friendly manner. The proud knight being dead, his men fled with all the hast they could unto the City of Aquitaine, bearing tidings of their Masters death. Duke Savary hearing thereof, was greatly displeased, for he was his Cozen.

Amongst the rest, Valentine understood of the lamentation that was made for the death of the proud knight beside the fountain; whereupon he suddenly mounted on horse-back, and entered the City, where he lodged in a Burgesse's house of the same City, where it came to the ears of Duke Savary, that he had slain his Cozen. And the Duke commanded that Valentine and his brother Orson should be brought before him: So being come into the presence of the Duke, he began on this manner: Friends (quoth he) of whence are you? What Princes do you serve? and whether be ye knights, or no? Sir (said Valentine) I am a knight, and owe my duty and service to the famous King Pepin of France. Then said

the Duke unto him; You have slain my Cozen: 'tis true (said Valentine) and so I should have done, had it been my own kinsman, for he was so high of stomach, that he distained to speak to any man, and smote so furiously at my Companion, that he had near hand killed him: which I perceiving, drew forth my sword and slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a stranger in this City, and hither am I come to Combat with the Green Knight; as also to behold that beauteous Lady Fozon, whom the whole world admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of equity, for strangers to pass up and down in safety: Consider, I have shewed you the cause of my coming: When the Duke heard Valentine say so, he said unto him: Knight, right well hast thou answered me, and seeing my Cozen hath come by this, more by Witte, than Courage, I am right sorrowful, and so I pass it over, and pardon the deed. But in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to Combat the Green Knight: come you into my Palace, and there you shall behold the beauty for which you thus far adventured. Moreover, that you may see you are not come alone, you shall behold fifteen Knights to accompany you, and new arrived for the Love of the Lady Fozon, and to try their Valour against the said Green Knight their Enemy. Go, I say, to my Palace, and salute my Daughter, as my custom is to strangers, before they adventure their persons in battel with the Green Knight, and having presented your selves before her in the sign of love, you shall receive from her a Ring of Gold.

Sir, (quoth Valentine) I shall be ready to do all Rights and Customes belonging to this place; and besides, will obey you in all things whatsoever it shall please you to command me. This conference ended, the Duke went into the Castle, accompanied with Valentine and Orson. Having entered the Hall where the Knights were assembled, Valentine beheld the Lady sitting amongst them, and making his way unto her, with all duty and reverence, at last he saluted her thus: Lady, you whose beauty and Fame is bruted through the world, the Gods preserve thee from the Green Knight, who I dare boldly avouch, is not worthy to touch your superexcellent lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it please you to understand, that Pepin the mighty King of France hath sent us his
ther

ther to present unto you the most noblest man that liueth on the earth, wherefoze Lady, behold him well, for he feareth no man, nor any weapon, albeit he cannot speak: wherefoze I assure you, that the Green Knight is not able to withstand his might, foze, nor make any resistance against him. Sir (quoth the Lady) I yeld unto the King of France thousands of thanks, as also to you that have taken such pains to present such a one before me: But say, wherefoze is this worthy Champion no better cloathed, for methinks he is of an excellent Person, well formed, straight, and of a hardy countenance: and if he were washed and bathed in some excellent liquor, his flesh would be both white and soft. Lady (quoth Valentine) he neuer wore garment till it was very lately, and then I caused this Jacket you see him wear, to be made fitting to his body: Moreover I assure you, that when he came first into Paris, he came like a wild, savage, and naked man, and his flesh was so hard, that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was speaking these words, Pezon beheld him very wisely; for he was in love with him in her heart: But yet Valentine began again thus to speak unto her: Lady, for my self I must say something also, therefore know this, that only for the love of you, have I adventured my self in this Climate, to see if fortune will so much favour me, that I may bear you away from all comers, by force of Arms: and yet fair Lady, one thing more I have to utter unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto my self, that I will never return again into France, till I have proved my fortune on the Green Knight, and with him do I intend to cope before I part hence; and either deliver him over into your hands as conquered; or suffer death, as many more before me have led the way. Alas, Knight, said the Lady, put not your self in danger for my sake, for methinks it is folly in any man, to endanger himself for the good of another: again, there be many valiant Knights have miscarried in seeking my love, and I the unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate days. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed, I mean to accomplish: Why then, fair Knight, God be thy speed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving Valentine the one, and Orson the other, also they sat down at the Table amongst the other Knights, and were welcomed with great feast.

feastings. Being set at the Table, Fezon still fixed her eye most on Orlon, and Orlon upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing love, looks one to another, with exceeding gracious aspects. Now, in the midst of all these feastings, the Green Knight (as his custome was, came thundring at the Gates, only to have a sight of the beauteous Lady Fezon, for you shall understand, that such were the conditions betwixt him and the Duke Savary, that every day it should be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady, without contradiction. Being entered the great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud voice, saying: Valiant Duke of Aquitaine, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me, for the love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea, I have yet within my Palace, fifteen valiant Knights, that mean to try their fortunes upon thee, before they part my Countrey. Then said the Green Knight, let me see them; and likewise the fair Lady Fezon: Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free liberty. Whereupon the Green Knight entered the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another, at last when he had gone through them all, he began to speak to them on this manner: Lords, eat and drink, and make merriment, for to morrow day shall be your last: and know that it will fall out to all your shares, to be hanged on the top of my Tree, as many before you have been tormented.

Valentine well marking his high words grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him: Proud Knight, these vaunts might well have been smothered in thy breast, for I tell thee, this day is come, hither a Knight that shall hold thee rack, more then any that ever yet encountered thee, and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is that shall vanquish thee, and leave thy dead corpse a prey for ravenous beasts. Now Orlon understood that Valentine spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be the Green Knight, by whom so many valiant men had lost their lives; insomuch that he saluted him with a fierce Willage, and whetting his teeth, leapt from the Table, and taking the Green Knight by the middle, threw him upon his neck, as if he had been a little Child, and having him at that advantage, springing a Wall, threw the Green Knight with such violence against the same, that all the beholders thought he had verily broken his neck, for he lay as dead:

dead, and so sat him down again at the Table, as before, and in a laughing gesture made signs, that he would bear upon his neck three such as the Green Knight.

At this sudden action of Orson, all the Knights there assembled began to laugh, and turning one towards another, said: Now is he come indeed, that shall be the overthrow of the Green Knight, but we cannot chuse but lament the woful chance that shall befall the Lady Fezon for he cannot speak, and yet is worthy all honour amongst the valiantest. The Lady on the other side, beholding his valour, was instantly overcome with the love of Orson, that only he conquered her heart, and left all the rest hopeless of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the Green Knight was again recovered, and counting it a deed of courage, began thus to say in the aforesaid presence: Lords, this Wild-man hath deceived my trust, for he came upon me at unawares, without saying any word, but I think good to let you understand that in the morning I shall be better provided, and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet of purpose, higher and stronger than for any that have been vanquished by me: and thereon will I hang his brazen corps, for Beasts and Birds to make their prey.



CHAP. XXI.

How Orson incountered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: also how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

ORson perceiving the Green Knight displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to chatter with his lips, making signs that he would meet him on the morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his hood, and threw it on the ground as his Page; which Valentine seeing, spake thus to the Green Knight;

Sir, the Wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown down his Gage, wherof, if your stomach serve, I advise you to take it up. Hereat the Green Knight fretted so exceedingly, that he replied never a word. Duke Savary being present, said unto him; Sir Knight, I well perceive that the Battel will grow strong between the Wild-man and you, and I think that he will hold you tough play, wherefore if you chance to conquer him also, you may well report of your valour throughout the world, for he hath tried some part of his courage already; and in vanquishing him, you need not stand in fear of any. The Green Knight hereat more and more enraged, swore by all the Gods, that ere the morning Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his strength, for he should never return again from the field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: and with these words left the Castle, and betook him to his Pavillion.

He being departed, the rest of the Knights still remained with the Lady Pezon, making great joy, and saying one to another, that the day was come, that the Green Knight should meet with his match. On the other side, Fame had so spread abroad the worth, act of Orson the savage, upon the Green Knight, that multitudes of people resorted into the Palace, to see and behold him, insomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut against them. Orson perceiving the people so abundantly to approach, and hearing the noise, leapt up into a window, to behold the people, so that they willing to see him, and he desired to see them, at night they all departed to their houses. The people being departed, and supper ended, they passed the rest of the night in merriments, and so to bed. Valentine being brought to his Chamber, went to bed, making signs to Orson to lye down by him; but he not regarding his kindness, laid him down upon the ground according to his mounted use, and so passed away that night. Morning being come, Valentine and Orson went into the Hall, where they found the Fair Lady Pezon accompanied with the other Knights, holding a dispute among themselves who should first fight with the Green Knight. At last stood up a worthy Knight of France (called Galliam, and said; Lords, so you be pleased, I am the man intent the first trial; to this they agreed, and presently armed him. Being armed,

armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all joy, and she to requite his kindnesse, gave him free leave, wishing the Gods to preserve and keep him in all danger, so that he may return as Conqueror: The Knight most humbly thanked her, and so took Horse, and hasted him toward the Tent of the Green Knight. The Green Knight perceiving from far his approach, set spurs to his horse, and encountered the famous Knight Galeram so fiercely, that he smote him off the horse to the earth. The Green Knight seeing him on the ground, suddenly lighted from his Horse, and took off the Helm from his head: Galeram fearing nothing but present death, yielded to the mercy of him, but all in vain, for without pitty, he first dispoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree as he had done the rest before Orson perceiving that Galeram was put to death, made signs with his hands that he would fight with him presently, not letting him have any respite: but Valentine answered him again by signs, that he should withdraw himself for a while, for he would first try his own strength on him. Hereupon he presently put himself in arms, and being armed, took his way towards the beauntious Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him: being come before her, she greely wondrous sorrowful, and yet at last she spake unto him on this manner: Alas, fair Knight, what marvels is this in you, to adventure your self for the love of such an unfortunate Lady as I am well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, go on, but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee against thine and mine enemy: and so farewell: saying so, she did so, and so did the Lady and the rest of the Knights, Valentine mounted his horse, to take his way toward the Green Knight. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a booby Knight, who was likewise enamoured with the love of the Lady, and thus began to say to him, Sir, have a little patience, I entreat you, and suffer me to go first. His friend (quoth Valentine) I freely give you my self: go, and return with my horse. This Knight was born in Tyrie, borne in Savoy, a man of great birth and living, but foolishly had run through his means, leaving him self little, forsook his Horse and Arms: having thus obtained leave of Valentine, he also took leave of the Lady, and there assembled, and so

departed unto the Tent of the Green Knight, the Green Knight perceiving Lyras to approach, leapt out of his Tabill: on to welcome him. Lyras seeing him, said; Sir, presently mount thy horse and defend thy self, for I breathe out defiance against thee: The Green Knight hearing him say so; called for his horse, which presently was brought unto him, and putting his foot into the stirrup, suddenly seated himself in the saddle, and betook him to his Spear and Green Shield, preparing to take their course each at other; but at the first encounter, the Green Knight ran so furiously, that he smote Lyras quite through the body with his Spear, so that he fell down stark dead; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his neck, and hanged him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the death of Lyras was wonderful sorrowful, yet taking courage, he recommended himself to the Gods: having thus done, he put spurs to his horse, and took his way speedily towards the Tent whereas the Green Knight remained. When the Green Knight espied him, he was more fearful of him than of all the rest: wherefore he called unto him, saying; Knight go ye ear unto that I now shall say, lest thou ponder Tree, there shalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (said Valentine) you have servants enough of your own, send them, for by me it shall never be fetched. If my Lady (quoth the Green Knight) you shall either bring me the Shield, or else know this, you shall never conquer me. When Valentine had well considered these words, he speak as touching the fetching of the Shield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he lost his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowful, and returning unto the Green Knight in an angry mood, said thus unto him: Go fetch thy Shield thy self for I cannot have it, wherefore accused be that Magician that so fastned it, and an evil end betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend (quoth the Green Knight) shall I tell thee whereof I sent thee thither; it was, for that this Shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such vertue, that no man, be he never so strong, can take it from the place where it is fastned, save only he alone by whom I shall be overcome, and for the doubt I stood in of thee, therefore sent I thee thither: but now my doubt is satisfied;

sied, and therefore I advise thee to return to the place from whence thou camest, and save thy self; for seeing thee so fair a knight, I am forced to pity thee, & take no pleasure in thy death, from which thou canst not escape, if thou fightest with me. Further, to the end thou shouldst not think I uttered these words to abuse thy patience. know this, that there is none living that can vanquish me, except first, he be Son of a King, and next, such a one as never sucked the breast of any woman. Now if thou beest such a one, thou mayst overcome me, if not, thou dost but shorten thy own days by an untimely death. At these words Valentine took little pleasure, knowing that by this relation he could not be that man; but seeing that he was come to that enterprize, he would not return till he had assayed his strength against him; and therefore with a loud voice he spake thus unto the Green Knight: Valiant and redoubted knight, I well understand I am not the man by whom thou shalt be conquered, yet whosoever I am, I will not depart hence until I have fought with you. By the Gods (quoth the Green Knight) then thou hast some secret treason to work against me, that thus thou runnest upon thy death wilfully, but ere I part with thee, I will make thee know the price of this thy rashness, and therewithal leapt upon his horse, bidding one of his servants to bring unto him a box of precious balm, the vertue of it was such that what wound soever he received, though never so mortal, it had power instantly to heal up the breach, as divers times before he had made tryal of the same.

After he had received the box of Ointment, he suddenly put spurs to his horse, and couching his spear in his rest both ran their course so furiously that their spears brake in many places: so bending themselves to the next course, they valiantly drew out their swords, whereat Valentine behaved himself so nimbly, that he gave the Green Kt. so fell a stroke that he cut him through his Armour, inso much that the blood issued out in great abundance. The Green Knight feeling himself wounded, lift up his arm to fetch a blow, that he struck away a great piece of his thigh, and having thus wounded him, said unto him: You may see I can wield a sword as well as you, I told you before, that you will fall under my hand, and anon I shall be faine to hang up your dead corps on a tree as I have

have done the rest of the Knights as come before you. Pagan (said Valentine) daunt not thyself overmuch, for as yet I am not conquered, therefore defend thyself, and therewith he gave the Green Knight such a blow, that he smote away a great quarter of his Shield, and the Green Knight at the same encounter, brake his sword upon the Helm of Valentine, and with the violence of the blow felled him from off his horse: Valentine being always valiant, suddeny recovered him upon his feet. The Pagan seeing him rise up, drew out a sharp pointed knife and threw it at Valentine, but he seeing it come, started a little aside, so that it missed him. The Green Knight being thus unarmed of his weapons, turned about his horse, thinking to have recovered them again, but Valentine being on the ground, and seeing fit opportunity, cut off his horse feet, so that both he and his horse came tumbling to the Earth. Being on the earth, he suddenly arose again, and then they were both together by strength of arms holding one another. But to be short, the bickering was so fierce between them, that they were both sore wounded.

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balm before spoken of. This Fight continued so long, that the day began to shut in, and both grew extream weary. The Green Knight was soe tired that he could not overcome Valentine, and though he were even spent in weariness, yet he proudly bear it out, saying Knight give over, for I perceibe thy weariness, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee. Go, return again to Aquitain, and rest there this night, and report that there never encountered me so valiant a Knight as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of all thy friends, for thou shalt never return. Valentine accepted his kind offer, and was glad thereof, for he was weary and sore wounded: So going to his horse, which was in another field, he returned back again to the City. When Duke Savary and his Lords saw Valentine return, they were so glad, and received him in great honour: among the rest there assembled, was Orson, who ran and caught him in his arms, and killed him. Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what tidings from the Green Knight. Sir (said Valentine) he resteth in his Pavilion; and I think he

is of that puissant strength and courage, that there is not a man living able to vanquish him. Valentine (quoth the Duke) you have escaped well, for never did any return as yet, but all have perished under the hand of the Green Knight, wherefore you have proved yourself a valiant Knight. Gracious Duke (said Valentine) of my conquest over him I can make but small boast, but to morrow there is appointed a new tryal of man-hood, and the victory may light upon whom the Gods please to favour. Having thus ended conference with the Duke, Valentine was unarmed, and then conducted to the Chamber of the Lady Feron. The Lady was right joyful to see him return with life from the Combat of the Green Knight. By this time supper drey on, and the Duke taking his place at the Table, caused Valentine to be set on his left hand, at the upper end of the board, for the Duke did honour him in the highest degree that might be. Supper being ended, Valentine withdrew himself unto his private Chamber, and the Green Knight rested in his Pavilion, where we will leave him, and speak of Valentine, who being in his Chamber, made many complaints.



CHAP. XXII.

How Valentine took good advice, and sent Orson on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how Orson overcame him.

Valentine having appointed the morrow to fight with the Green Knight, began to be troubled wondrously as he lay in bed: Still bethinking him on what had hapned him the day before. At last when he had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to resolve upon this conclusion. I am not, neither can be that thing Son that should overcome the Green Knight, for I can neither remove the Sheld he sent me for, neither was I nourished without the breast of Woman. Again, I am very doubtful of the Combat, and therefore stand wavering whereupon to rely. At last he began

gan thus to thinke: What if Orson should be armed in my stead, & thereby to the wast of fortunes wrack? Why it shall be so. At the break of the day appearing, he arose from his weary bed, and coming unto Orson, he told him by signs how that he should put on his Armour, and take his horse, and make towards the Green Knights Pavillion to fight with him.

Orson understanding by his signs his hearts intent, leaped and danced up and down the Hall joyfully, making signs to Valentine again, that the Pagan Knight should never escape his hands, and denying his horse and Arms, desired nothing of him, save only a club of wood, such a one as he was accustomed to wield, & shaking his head, made signs that he would have no other Armour against the Pagan Knight: Valentine seeing him so resolute, gave him to understand by signs, that he must put on the same Armour, and ride on the same horse that Valentine brought out of France: for that the Knight should know no other, but that it was Valentine that came against him. The Wilde-man understanding the subtilty intended, agreed unto all that Valentine commanded him. So Orson was Armed with the same Armour and Horse which Valentine had imployed the day before. Orson being thus armed (contrary to his accustomed manner) seemed a right personable creature, and made many signs, that he would overcome the Green Knight ere the noon tide of the day, without either mercy or pity; and in these signs he was so earnest, that he caused great laughter throughout all the assembly then present. Orson thus prepared, he took his leave of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, and made him signs to stand in fear of nothing, for before that he returned he would bring the Green Knight with him, either alive or dead.

After this manner departed Orson, but before he took his horse, he had forgot to take his leave of the fair Lady Fezon, so returning back again to the Palace, where the Lady sat accompanied with her train, and espying her, would have run onto her, and kissed her, for by signs he gave her to understand, that for the love of her he would presently fight with the Pagan Knight. The Lady in a smile, retorted back again (in sign) that she loved him exceed-

exceeding well, wishing him to bear himself valiantly, and at his return back again, she would grant unto him her love. Thus having taken his leave of the Lady Fezon, and the rest of the Ladies there assembled, he betook him to his Horse, and being gone from the Dukes Palace, there was nothing so much talked on generally throughout the whole City, as the Wild-man was gone to Combat with the Green Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but Orson came unto the Pavilion of the Green Knight, and without any words smote the top thereof with his Spear, signifying defiance. The Green Knight taking this Rustick Salutation in great scorn, swore by Mahomet, that he would fetter his Pride ere the Evening Sun took rest, and therewithal mounted on his Steed, and couched his Spear in his rest, and entered the field against Orson.

Orson seeing him in a readyness, seemed to give back, as half afraid, and presently having gathered more courage, they encountered with such force that both Horse and Men fell unto the earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered their feet, drew forth their Swords, and laid one at the other right fiercely. The Green Knight being fired with anger and pride, smote Orson such a great blow that he cut the Circle of Gold upon his Helm, and smote a great piece of his Shield quite off; and wounded Orson so deeply, that with the out-rage of the stroke, his Sword fell out of his hand. Orson seeing the blood run down about him, was far more fierce then before, rolling his eyes, and shaking his head, at last with his sword he took the Knight such a pat upon his Head, that he entered the flesh and bare a great part thereof afore him, and his Sword sliding off his head, took him on the arm so powerfull, that the blood followed in great abundance. The Green Knight having his former Balsamum, feared no wounds, which made Orson think it was in vain any longer to use his Sword, sth he could heal himself so quickly.

Upon this, Orson threw away all his Armour and Weapons, and suddenly run upon the Green Knight, and caught him fast by the arms so strongly, that he cast him on the ground: Being under him, Orson took off his Helm, and held him so down that the Green Knight did yield to his mercy. Orson, nothing regarding



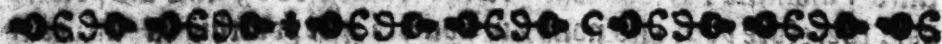
his submission, would suddenly have taken away his life, if Valentine had not sala in presently to his rescue, by riding post, to see the end of the Combat. Being come, he made signs to Orfon that he should not kill him, which Orfon obeyed, but still kept him in subjection. And at last Valentine began to speak to the Green Knight, saying: Proud Knight, you well see that you are in the hands of your enemy; wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present death, for look how you have done to the vanquished Knights, by hanging them on ponder Trees, so likewise you your self should be hanged on the highest branch of all, abide the rest. Alas, quoth the Green Knight, you seem to be a man of pity, furnished with courtesie, therefore my request unto you is, to spare my life, (quoth Valentine) that shall I not, except upon condition. First, that you renounce your Paganism: and Secondly, go with me into France, to King Pepin, telling him that by Valentine and Orfon you

you were overcome in single Combat. To all these conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my oath to perform what soever you have already spoken.

Then Valentine made a sign unto Orson, that he should rise, which he readily obeyed, but so, that he left him nothing about him to make any further resistance. Being upon his feet, he spake thus unto Valentine: Sir, it was you that combated against me yesterday, therefore you, and none but you did I expect this in answer. I see I am conquered by another, even the same, that in the Dukes Palace threw me upon the ground. True (quoth Valentine) the very same. Why then (quoth the Green Knight) I will reveal unto thee one secret more, and I beseech thee grant unto me my request: send this knight that hath conquered me, unto under tree, and if he bring away with him the shield there fastened, then I am well assured he is the man that should conquer me, or else there is no man living can triumph in my conquest. Hereupon Valentine made a sign unto Orson to fetch away that shield, whither as he appointed him, and coming near the Tree, he stretched forth his arm to take it down, and suddenly it leaped into his hand, and to be brought it with him to the Green Knight. When he saw Orson have the shield, his heart smote against his sides, and throwing himself at his feet would have kissed them. But Orson receiving news from Valentine to the contrary, would not suffer him, but took him by the arms and lifted him up. Being upon his feet, he spake thus: Alas, I of all others, owe unto you my service, and all reverence, for now I am assured you are both a knight and a valiant knight, and amongst all other I confess that by conquering me, you have won unto your self a valiant knight.

Moreover, this knight you tell, that he that conquers me, shall be no less than son unto a King and Queen, and in all he shall be one as never lacked the breast of any Coloman: and that this shall appear to be the truth, I shall further prove it by my sister Clemencia, for the birth of which of years that I shall be the hundred fives and forty times that I shall live, and her Generation shall be full. Wherefore, that this deed shall continue speaking, and such title as the most worthy of the world ever lived by. Chm.

Le where it now stanteth and he being once entred, the said
 head should lose his vertue, and is the only man to have my Si-
 ster Clerimond to wife; wherefore (fair Knight) these things
 thus fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you would wed me
 her, as the most hardest and renowned knight in the world.



CHAPTER XXIII.

Orson having conquered the Green Knight, Valentine caused him to be Christianed, and sending him to King Pepin, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight.

The Green Knight having made this motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto Valentine a King of Gold, upon condition that he would carry that King unto her: which King Valentine accepted, and the Green Knight yielded himself as a Prisoner, and is now going towards France, to accomplish that Oath that he before had given him. Valentine having received this King, never rested till he had seen the Lady so commended unto him. After this the Green Knight (by consent) was Crowned King of the Green Mountain, and there held great State: presently upon this league of friendship concluded, he gave commandment throughout all his Host, that every man should depart away from the Confinnes of Aquitain, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage to Duke Savaries Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, Valentine and Orson took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of Aquitain, whereat was no little joy: and the Duke with all his Lords, received him with great Triumph into the City. The Green Knight being thus brought as Prisoner to the Duke, began to say on this manner: My Lords, you owe much honour unto the Knight that hath conquered me: and further, I give you to understand for certain, that he can be no less then Son unto a King; and also, that he ne-

her succ'd womans breast, for if he had, he could not have been my Conquerour, for so it was euer said by the Brazen Head that standeth in the chamber of my Sister Clemonde. And the Duke, well may this carry some likelihood of truth, for he hath born himself very valiantly against you: wherefore I thinke it my part to honour him with my utmost endeavours.

At this time is this worthy train entred the Dukes Palace, whither the Duke commanded his Daughters presence, and then he said unto her; Daughter, behold here the Green Knight, that hath for your love made spoil of my Countrey, and I was no way able to repel him back, but only by this valiant Knight, that Valentine hath brought along with him from the Court of K. Pepin, who hath extraordinarily freed us of our fears: wherefore this is my desire, that as he hath conquered yours and mine enemy, so he may also conquer your Love, whereunto I right willingly agree that you shall have him for your Husband. The Duke having thus said, the Lady answered for her self in this manner: My redoubted Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no reason why I should resist, but do submit my self to your dispose, for if I should do otherwise, it were in me great disobedience. And again, my Lord, you know promise is already past, that whosoever he was that could vanquish the Pagan Knight, should for his labour receive me for his Wife. Now my Lord, the day of my deliverance is come, so then (according to your promise) you must give him to me, and I receive him as my lawfull Spouse; otherwise I shall make void the edict before gone throughout the world, and you thought false in your promises. Daughter (quoth the Duke) you have spoken right graciously, and your answer pleaseth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us, wherefore it were not amiss to know of the Conquerour Knight, whether he will have you. If he agree unto this match, I shall give him in dowry half my Countrey of Aquitaine. Hereupon Valentine standing by, demanded of Orson by signs, whether he would have the fair Lady Fezon to Wife? who answered again by signs, that he would never have other. When caused the Duke to be brought before him a Priest, who then contracted them: and so their time was passed with many disports. These

These things thus ended, Orlon made signs unto the Lady, that he would never lie with her till he had gotten his life of his tongue, and that his companion Valentine had conquered the Love of the Lady Clerimond. Of all which you shall hear more hereafter.

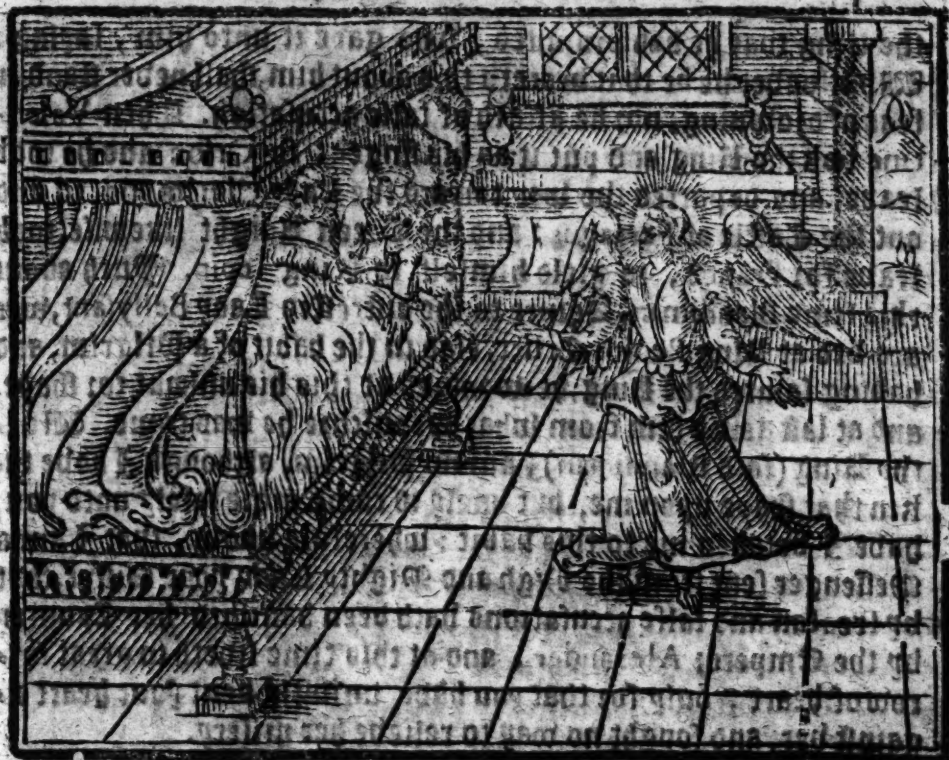


CHAP. XXIV.

How the same night that Orlon was made sure to the Lady, Fe-
son, an Angel appeared unto Valentine, and of the
change she gave unto him.

The day being past with great Banquettings and Solemnity,
wherein Feson was assured unto Orlon, the night approa-
ched, and every man took him to his rest. Amongst the rest, Va-
lentine and Orlon were lodged most richly in a goodly chamber,
and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the apparition of
an Angel appeared unto him, saying: Valentine (know this) that
in the morning thou speedily depart this Land, and take along
with thee Orlon, by whom the Green Light hath been banquish-
ed, and without further delay get thee into the Castle of Mar-
gus, there you shall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou shalt
understand of whence thou art descended.

This strange Vision made Valentine into a thousand fears, and
in great melancholly passed he away the night. The day being
broken, he caused Orlon to arise, and being ready, they both
hasted thither unto the Duke's Palace, where he found his Barons
assembled in him, and amongst the rest there present, the Green
Knight. Not long after entered the Duke, being entreated, the Green
Knight took an occasion to give him the time of the day, and began
to speak unto him on this manner: Most Reasoned Duke, I freely
confess in I feel banquished, and withal renounce all right unto
your Daughter, concluding an everlasting peace with you: upon
condition that you will permit me to be baptized tonight, save the Duke,
with his hands and signifi-
cant your request. When the Duke had
said that should baptize him, Valentine being present, began thus



to say : Lorde, and the residue here assembled, may it please the
valiant Duke to grant me one thing, which is this, that the name
of this Knight be called Pepin, it is the name of the most
mighty King of France, even he that nourished and fostered me e-
ven from my Cradle. The Duke consented unto Valentines de-
mand, so he was called Pepin : after the Baptism, the Duke made
a motion to Valentine and Orson for to wed his Daughter the
beauteous Lady Fesor, but Valentine not assenting thereof, made
this excuse, that both he and Orson had vowed to go to Jerusalem
ere they did attempt any other action, after the conquest of the
Green Knight.

The Duke hearing this excuse, made them leave, upon this
condition, that Orson should take an Oath to return again into A-
quain, at his coming back from thence : to this they both agreed.
The same hour also, the Green Knight took leave of the Duke of
Aquitain, and went his way into France, to keep his promised
faith to King Pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him for

the King that he had promised, who gave it unto him, saying: Whatsoever he be that beareth this about him, shall never stand in fear of drowning, nor be afraid of false accusation. Then Valentine took the Ring and put it on his finger: so Orson and he took leave, and departed the way toward the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Castle of Ferragus: and the Green Knight likewise took leave for France, to yield himself to King epin. Much about this time Blandiman, Squire to the distressed Lady Bellysant, was arrived at King Pepin's Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the King, he wondered at this his unlookt for shape, and at last asked him from what Sepulchre he was come. Unto the King (said Blandiman) I am no Pilgrim, although I have taken that shape upon me, but onely to come more safely unto you, have I betaken me to this habit: wherefore know, that I am a Messenger sent from the High and Mighty Lady your Sister, that by treason and false accusations hath been banished her Country by the Emperour Alexander, and at this time liveth in great sorrow of heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your heart against her, and sought no way to relieve her misery.



CHAP. XXV.

How King Pepin came to the knowledge that Valentine and Orson were his Nephews, by the report of Blandiman: and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto Valentine.

Blandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand of him where his Sister was: Blandiman replied, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my word never to discover to any: But worth King, if you make doubt of her loyalty, I shall bring you a man that will fight in her quarrel, to prove her honest. Nay (quoth the King) I have seen tryal enough thereof already, by the downfall of the Arch-Bylest. Also I have made much means to hear of her, but cannot hear any

feelings of her; and indeed that which most grieved me, is that
 she was great with Child when she was repulsed the Kingdom;
 neither am I assured, whether ever she was delivered of that chil-
 dren. My Lord (quoth Blandiman) know this for a truth, that my
 Lady said her great belly in the Forrest of Orleans; and with it
 she dispatched me to get her the help of a woman, or ever I could
 return, she was delivered of two fair Sons, the one of which was
 carried violently from her by a Ware into the Wood; she never
 went whither, but she followed the Ware so long, till at last I found
 her in a dangerous sound upon the ground. I coming to her, took
 her up in my arms, and comforted her so well as I could, till being
 somewhat recovered, in woful sighs she unfolded unto me the
 whole manner of the loss of her child by the Ware; and for the o-
 ther, she had left it under the Tree. I hearing her say so, hastened
 towards that tree, whereas I left her; but being come thither, I
 could not find the other child neither. And thus (worthy King)
 have I related unto you the woful story of your Sister, and her
 two Infants in the Forrest, and other things have I none, but
 this, that I am that Blandiman that you gave unto your Sister to
 attend her, when she married the Emperour Alexander. The King
 giving ear unto this tale, at last said: Alas Blandiman, thy words
 distress me into a thousand fears, what should become of my Sister,
 but seeing thou canst tell no more, tell me yet how long ago this
 is, that thou hast told me. My Lord (quoth he) it was even that
 day you met me in the Forrest of Orleans, and I related unto you
 the woful things of your Sisters banishment. This struck he
 King into such an admiration, that he began to recover his wits,
 & then presently came into his mind the finding of Valentine in y^e
 Forrest, & how by the same Valentine, Orson was conquered in the
 same wood. When he began to think on the story that Blandiman
 had told him, & thereby knew that there were y^e two babes brought
 forth by his Sister, therefore he sent for his Queen & other Ladies,
 to let them understand what Blandiman had declared, saying: My
 Lords, I have long time sought & brought up in my Court two
 young Children; and now it doth plainly appear they are Sons to an
 Emperour, & my near kinsmen, Valentine the one, whom I found in
 the Forrest of Orleans, brought forth there by my Sister Bellylake,

in the time of her exile; and Orson who was likewise banished by Valentine, to be his natural brother, and both Sons to the Emperor of Greece. At these tidings all the Court was wondrous joyful, save only Haufray and Henry, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their hearts very sorrowful, for above all other they desired the death of Valentine, that next him they might work their wills of their younger brother Charlemain, against whom they chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will more plainly appear.

But to return back again to Blandiman, who hearing the King speak so much of the two children, demanded of the King if he knew in what Country they were: Why (said the King) one of these I have brought up in my Court a long time, in such fashion, that he is become a right valiant knight, and by his valour hath conquered his Brother, being a Wild-man, living in the Wood at Orleans like a Beast, and one that did much damage to all the Country thereabout. Having conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed, and took their way towards Aquitain, to fight with a right worthy Champion, called the Green Knight. and since their departure I never heard what became of them. Sir (said Blandiman) according to the tale you have told, I remember well, that near Aquitain I met two such, but I am troubled that I knew them not. So the King musing at these accidents, caused Blandiman to be highly feasted, and held as a companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it hapned, that on the same day the Green Knight (of whom we have before made mention) arrived at Paris at the Kings Court: as soon as he came into the presence of King, he saluted him with great reverence. The King seeing him all in Armour, marvelled much thereat, and at last demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The Green Knight replied again on this manner. Honourable King, know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that Knight that for the love of the Lady Fezon, daughter to the Duke of Aquitain, have for one whole year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my subjection, and holding him thus under me, I took a Truce with him for six months,

upon these conditions, that if within that time he found not worth a Knight, that by force of Arms should conquer me, I was to have his Daughter Pezon to Wife: On the other side: if I were conquered, I should remove away my Siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing any further damage. So it is, that a long time I was fought withal, by others valiant Knights of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endured death, and were still hanged upon a Tree: at last it so fell out, that there assailed me two worthy Knights, the one named Valentine, and the other Orson. Valentine fought with me one whole day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that night coming on, we were forced to give o'er, all wounded, tired, and wearied. The next morning when the battel should be again renewed, his fellow Orson armed himself in Valentines Armour, entered the field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me defiance: I coming any competitor, addressed out my self against him, but little abated my strength, for in the end he overcame me, and would have taken away my life, had not Valentine come in upon me, & rescued me, upon condition, first, that I would forsake Mahomet: secondly, that I should come unto you, and yield my self at your command, and to stand to your censure either in life or death. Again, when I received Baptism, he caused me to be called Pepin, and so is my name.

The King having heard all this long story from the Green Knight, made this answer in the presence of all his Barons: Welcome to us, and of your company we are right glad, live with us in our Court and be joyful, for I freely grant you your life, and promise you farther, that if you will tarry with us in our Country, I will endow you with many fair lands and possessions. The King shewing himself thus gracious, demanded of him where these Knights were, that had conquered him: Parry (qd. the Green Kt.) I left them both at Aquitain with the valiant Duke Savary, who holdeth them in as great respect as any that are remaining in his Court.

Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of B'an-Alman, and the Green Knight, King Pepin had perfect intelligence of his beauteous Sister, and his two valiant Nephews. After all these things happened, King Pepin made a solemn vow, that he would go himself in person into Greece, to tell the Empe-

red of these gladson tydings, and to take order to send abroad in
to all Lands to find her out.

out, that there attacked me the month of April, the one named
 entered death, and the other was a red-tail. I left
 Committee, but there was not any that could observe me, but

KING Pepin having put himself in a readiness to depart into France, went to Rome, and before much time was spent, he arrived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him with great honour, and much fraying. Upon a day, as he sat at dinner with the Pope in his Palace pontifical, there came sundry unto him, that the great Sultan of Egypt had besieged Constantinople; whereupon that brother of this message, after his last conference ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father, the Sarazens with much power hath besieged, and do continually overrun Constantinople, and he gave me charge to crave out aid against these enemies of Christianity. When the Pope understood these uncomfortable tidings, he was driven into a wonderful pain, not knowing any present way to send them relief: but King Pepin being in presence, comforted him greatly, and said: Holy Father, it is no rare for this business, for I request but a competent sum of money and men, and I shall lead them to Constantinople with such a courageous heart, that I shall put the Sultan and his forces to the sword, such an inveterate hatred hath I against these Wicked Idolaters. The Pope hearing him to resolve, thanked him for his courageous heart, and said unto him: Right Christian King, seeing thou dost proffer thy self in person to undertake this service, I shall with all convenient speed provide for a business of such import: presently hereupon by a day all things prepared, and with an Army of thirty thousand Romans, King Pepin departed, and

as soon as possible he could be arrived at Constantinople. Being
thither come, he found the City round besieged, and the Citizens in
great fear of the Soldans Army, betaking themselves into the
City, keeping the same against all the force of the Saracens.

The Emperor himself was forced to retire into the City, and
being cooped up in to small a room, his troubled thoughts ever
more ran upon the Lady Bellisari, whom he had cruelly banished,
always fearing that she was dead; for it was now full twenty
years since he had seen the face of her ever. At this time the King
Pepin came within the walls of Constantinople, and there landed
his army, raising pavilions, pitching of tents, and ranging
his forces into battle array. The Soldan having knowledge of his
arrival, and also of his provision, was much abashed thereat, and
with all diligence returned to his strong Babilion; and being set
down his army in order, there came unto him certain of his captains
fearfully and doubtfully saying thus unto him: Great and mighty
Soldan, we come to give you true intelligence, that there is lately
arrived to the number of two hundred thousand Romans, to bid us
present battle under the conduct of Pepin King of France. Where-
fore it only behoveth us, that you take labour to bid us to pre-
sent and resist these forces. Peace screech-owls (quoth the Soldan)
be not afraid, for you are deceived by some false report; the whole
Roman Nation is not able to furnish so many soldiers. Go on
your way boldly, for I swear by Malomet, the religion of Mahomet
being under my protection, both the Kingdom of Rome and France
also, and whatsoever is our friends, shall be yours, and put into
your hands in readiness to receive them.

The Emperor, who was now in the City, in order of bat-
tel secretly to assault the Pagan Army, and secretly sent a Letter
to the Emperor, being in the City, whereby he requested the Em-
peror that they within the City should put the invaders in leadenets,
and so in a day upon the Pagan Army that they for King Pepin and
his companies should receive them on the morrow, thus being all
entcompassed about, there was hope to get the day of the Saracens.

The Emperor received these Letters joyfully, and did as King
Pepin commanded them, and when forty of the Christian battal-
ions thus arrayed, they were no longer afraid of the Saracens, but they

perceived the Army of King Pepin, marching on with Banners displayed, and noise of Trumpets sounding in most outrageous manner. This made the Pagans to look about, and the Soldan calling to him two of his hardest men of war, commanded them secretly to go through the Host of the Christians, and if it were possible, to number them. These two did as the Soldan commanded, but being come near the Host of King Pepin, the Green Knight espied them coming down a little Hill, drawing somewhat nearer, he discerned they were Sarazens, and presently put spurs to his horse, ran against them with such force, that his spear brake upon his thigh: The Sarazens seeing him run so fiercely, did not flee, but received him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chapter.



CHAP. XXVII.

How the Green Knight Juffed against the two Sarazens, and having slain the one the other fled: and how King Pepin and his Host was lodged within Constantinople.

The Green Knight having recovered a new Spear, he ran fiercely against both the Sarazens, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place, smote him to the earth, so that he never rose, then making against the other, he gave him such a wound that he suddenly fled away: King Pepin seeing this accident, presently assailed the Soldans Host, and Myllon Daugler flew to the King of Aquile; and thre other ere he gave over the field, with many and divers other woꝝ by deeds of Chivalry: The Soldan seeing him so play the Devil in his Host, cryed out to follow Daugler that had made such havoc: So they did as he commanded, pursuing him so close on both sides, that at length they cut off one of his horses thighs, forcing him to fall upon the earth, and had there perished, had not the Green Knight. (mainger all the Sarazens) thrust himself into the press, slaying and beating down as many as made any resistance, and in the end so relieved Daugler, that he freshly hoisted him, and brought him clean out of danger.

ger. After this, they both joyned together in such furious outrage, that they spared none that came in their way. Fierce was this battel and endured long, but King Pepin and his men made great slaughter among the Pagans: but notwithstanding all this their valour they had lost the day, had it not been for the Emperour, that with his Host valiantly assailed the Pagans on the other side, and made amongst them a very bloody slaughter. The King seeing the courage of the Emperour so great, gathered together again his scattered Troops, and entred into the battel with great fury, and now were the Pagans begirt round about. As soon as the King came unto the sight of the Emperour, he said unto him: Great Prince, wert thou self right valiant, and this day's re-night, I shall tell thee tidings of thy fair Lady Bellysant.

These words added fresh courage unto the Emperour, who cryed out to his men: Courage for Constantinople, and he that wins honoꝝ shall be richly rewarded. And with these words entred into the thickest of the battel; where he, King Pepin, and the Green Kit. so valiantly behaved themselves, that which way soever they turned, they made way before them.

Now began the Sarazens to doubt whether they should ever escape away alive, and therefore fearing the worst, betook themselves to flight: But their flight being stopped by the King of Sclavonia, who led the rear-ward for the Souldan, presently rushed in with his troops, consisting of fifty thousand fighting men, making withal so great a shout, that it seemed by the sound thereof, their part got the better. The Emperour and the King perceiving their coming, wisely considered that their men were tired and out-worn, and the enemy fresh and lusty, sounded a retreat, and retired themselves and all their Souldiers into the City. The Souldan seeing this, followed upon them, and strongly belleged the City round about, so that neither the Emperour nor the King could issue out thereof. Thus they abode till they were well nigh famished thinking thereby utterly to overthrow the Christians. So leave we them, and return to Valentine and Orson, who for the love of Clerimond, have adventured, as you have already heard.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Valentine and Orson arrived at the strong Castle, wherein
 fair Clerimond was, and how by the Brasen-Head they
/>
 had knowledge of their parents.

After many days travel, at last Valentine and Orson lighted
 upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle, strong and
 impregnable, the covering whereof was of shining metall, glit-
 tering in the Sun, that it brake Valentine into suspicion that it
 was it, whereunto the Green Knight had directed him to have a
 sight of the fair Lady Clerimond. At all adventures he maketh
 men to search this Castle, and at last entered into this Island by
 one of the Doors thereof. Being entered, he demanded who was
 owner of that Castle which appeared so sumptuous to the eye?
 Answer was returned, that the Castle was in the keeping of the
 fair Clerimond, Sister unto the Great Ferragus, and builded by
 a mighty man in substance, a Saracen the which Saracen amongst
 all other his excellent works done in this Castle, he caused one
 chamber to be richly adorned: of the which chamber more shall be
 spoken of in that place.

Whereupon it was told unto Valentine amongst other things,
 that in the chamber stood an excellent Tassier made by Art, upon
 the which Tassier stood a head of Brass, composed a long time be-
 fore, by the strong arm of a dwarf, the which head was of such
 an excellent composition, that it gave answer to any thing that
 was demanded. Valentine hearing this strange relation of the
 Castle, was right glad to note he was partly persuaded that this
 must needs be the place, for he had so long time sought a where-
 in the Green Knight told him he should find his sister. In a day
 walked of all Nations for her excellent beauty. Having gathered
 knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, and went on
 his way, accompanied with Orson, to see if he could get entrance
 into this castle. By this time they were come to the gates thereof

where thinking to enter, they were refused by ten Hurly Baldris,
that kept the gate night and day.



When they saw Valentine and Orson make motion to enter,
they said unto them: Ladies, of what case you be, with how you
come back, for into this Castle entered none, of what condition
ever, without the leave and licence of a Porter, to whom we (as
Guard) do appertain. Why (quoth Valentine) go tell her, and ask
whether it be her pleasure to enter or not: before upon one of them
entered the Chamber where fair Clerimond was, and kneeling un-
to her said: Lady, before your Gate lie both two Gallants, that
would enter your Castle, they seem fierce and courageous, full of
high spirit, and men far disagreeing from the Laws and Religion
of our Country: Now fair Lady say, shall they have entrance? De-
scend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a window to take a
view of them, and let the gates be surely kept, for I mean to ques-
tion with them my self. The Porter did as he commanded, then
Clerimond that was well language, leaped out of a window, up-
on

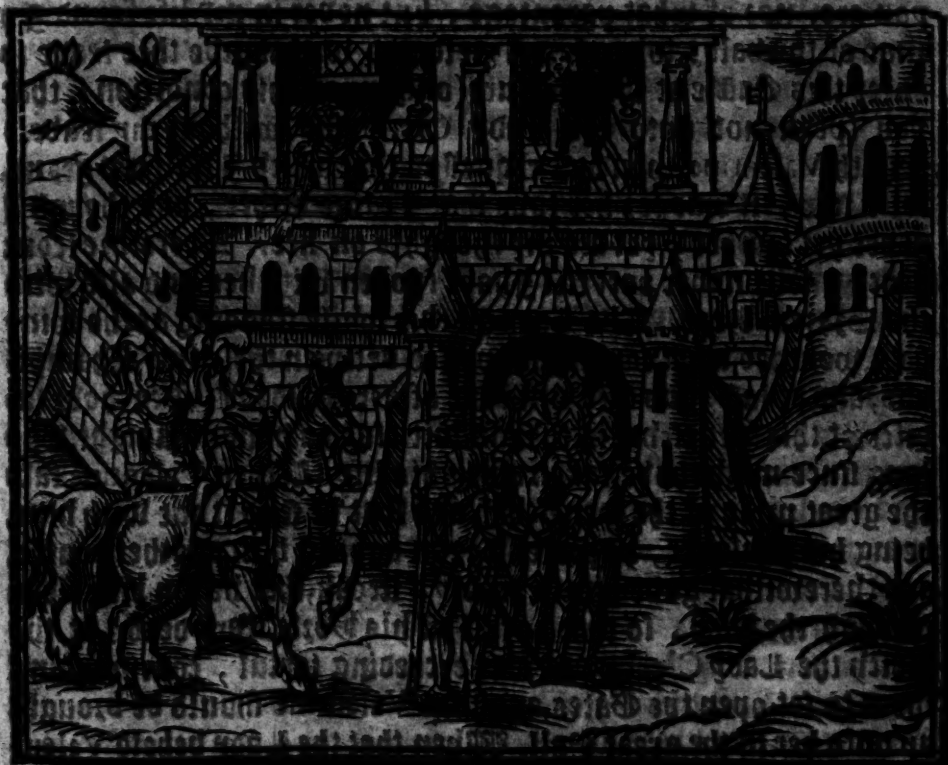
an a Curb on clobbered with gold, and said unto Valentine, What are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle without leave? Lady (sd. Valentine, with an undaunted courage) I am a Knight that travelleth this way, and would gladly speake with that head of brasse that remaineth within this Castle, if it be your pleasure, because (as I do understand) it shall both doubt, and at (quoth the Lady) upon these terms you may not enter: but if you can bring me any certain sign from one of my Brethren, either from King Ferragus, or the Green Knight, Lord of Tarrary, then you may freely enter this Castle: Or by any other means, if you may enter, that is by the Seneschall of this place, with whom you may run at courses with your Spere, to my own date: wherefore now be advised, either fetch me some of them tokens from one of my brethren, or try your fortune in single Combat, as I have told you. Lady (quoth Valentine) against your Seneschall I dare adventure: for I had rather win my entrance by your own blows, then by entreats, and fawning speeches. This choice chose Valentine, rather then to be doing the thing which he had brought along with him, given him by the Green Knight, to present to his Sister Clerimond. The Lady seeing his resolute humors, suddenly fell in love with him, and presently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brasse stood, and said unto it: What is that Knight of courage that would so proudly enter this Castle? Lady, quoth the Head, that Knight shall you know nothing, until such time as you have brought him before me. Clerimond at this answer seemed very sorrowful, for she was greatly in love with Valentine.

CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as Valentine was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) Clerimond bewitched the love of Valentine: and how he justified for the entrance, and overcame the Seneschall.

Clerimond pondering in her mind the words of Valentine, hearing overcome such affection, said on this manner: O! Valentine is valiant, and beautiful, and if I have power over the head

of Wals, I shall never take other Husband then this knight.
Whereupon she sent for the Seneschal, and told him, that this
knight would enter the Castle. The Seneschal thereat enraged,
began thus: Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quick-
ly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your love.



The Seneschal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go arm your valient-
ly, and to be departed to put yourself in arms. Being armed, he
mounted his horse, couched his spear in his rest, and withal issued
out of the gate in readinesse. The Lady also, got into a window to
behold the Combat. When Valentine saw the Seneschal to come
towards him, he couched his spear, and pulling spurs to his horse
they met to receive; that their spears brake in pieces; presently
drawing a new rapier, suddenly they met to receive that they fell to
the ground horse & man; but Valentines horse got up with his ma-
ster. Valentine being thus saved by his horse, rode into the Senes-
chals Salle up, and he towl mount your self, for there is no honor in
sitting at home.

conquering an enemy at advantage. Whereupon the Seneſchal was freſhly mounted, and new ſpears given them again: then took the a freſh carrier, and herewithal Valentine ſo encountered him about the head, that he bore away his helme and threw both horſe and man down upon the earth. The Seneſchal feeling himſelf in danger ſaid thus unto Valentine, Knight, I know not from whence you are, nor of what parentage, but never in my life found I a man of theſe valour, wherefore I yield and wiſh to give thee leave to enter this Caſtle at thy pleaſure (only upon this condition, that you ſpeak not unto the Lady Clerimond without my leave.) Quoth Valentine, thou haſt requeſted that which I will not grant, for I know, it was for her love that I came hither, and though I never get ſafer, yet are my thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I will never part till I have ſpoken with her and alſo with the Biſhop of Here. And ſo ſaw all the while ſtanding at the window, wondering what ſort of ſpeeches were between theſe two Champions, and at laſt thus ſaid unto one of her ſervants: See how indifferet this Seneſchal is, to fight with ſuch a valiant Knight, who long ſince might have taken away his life. When Valentine ſaw the great pity of the Seneſchal, and that he ſhew it out both him, being his ſervant, he went forth againſt him another round, and therewithal gave him a blow a brook, that he was ſtraight ſlained the ſpot, ſo that he fell on his backe dead: at the which the Lady Clerimond was exceeding ſorry, commanding them to ſet open the Gates and that Valentine ſhould be brought up unto her in the great Hall. When that the Lord beheld Valentine well, he came ſo towards him, and ſaid unto him on this manner: Knight, you are most welcome, for I never ſaw a more valiant and courageous man all the days of my life: Enter my Caſtle, for it appeareth by your valour and Chivalry, that you are deſcended from the loins of ſome Royal Stock. Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is called Valentine, a poor adventurer, for neither my ſelf, nor ſo my Companion, never know from what ſtock we were deſcended. He was wounded by a Wood in the Forest, and lived there like a wild man, till when as I conquered him by my ſword. Besides he never ſpoke in his life more than you ſee at the preſent. Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled

trabelled to get knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the love of you, being so fair a Lady.



CHAP. XXX.

How Valentine shewed Clerimond her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen Head, which told him from whence he was descended.

VALentine having purchased free entrance by overcoming the Seneschal, at last he shewed the King that the Green Knight had given him, and smiling delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the token, saying: Fair it might, had you heard this thing when you first craved access into this Castle, you had never endured the danger that you have now escaped: but since it hath pleased you to try your valor, I cannot better commend you, then to admire your brave courageous heart. Whilst Valentine and the Lady were thus talking together, the tables were spread, the Lady sat down, and Valentine was also placed just against her, in whom she took her greatest felicity, as he in her: dinner being ended, Clerimond arose from the Table, & taking Valentine by the hand, said thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchased your welcome, deserv-
ing to enter into my privatest chamber, and so you shall, when that chamber wherein the Brazen Head dwelleth, the which Head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyful tidings: wherefore both you and your Companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear as you desire to be heard. Whereat Valentine grew exceeding joyful: Next, for that he should now understand that which he long desired to know, secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the Hall, she brought him into that Chamber: being come unto the door thereof, and thinking nothing, then found the chamber door guarded on this manner: On the one side a grim fearful and ugly shaven Willard, strong, and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his back, which offered to make resistance: On the other

other side of the chamber doo: stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the doo, that none cou'd enter in without the Ladies leave, or else fight with the Villain and Lyon. Valentine perceiving these two watchmen to make resistance, demanded of the fair Lady Clerimond the meaning thereof, who answered: These two you see here are to keep this doo, that none may enter without fighting with them, and that divers have perished in their presumption; and again, the Lyon is of such fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a King, and so such she shews her self very loving.

Lady (quoth Valentine) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune wth the Lyon and by main strength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon looked him, and let him pass. Orson likewise killed the Villain, and ere he could be ready to lift up his club of iron, he took him by the middle so strongly that he threw him against the wall, he took away his club, and gave him such a blow that he tumbled on the ground, and had it not been for the Lady Clerimond, he had slain him in that place. Being both thus vanquished, the gate was opened, and they entered the chamber, wherein they might see all the world could afford, a Gold, Azure, Rubies, Sapphires, with great multitude of precious Stones, within this Chamber was four Pillars of Jasper, marvellous rich, of which, two of them were yellow as most fine gold, a third green more green then grass, a fourth more red then a flame of fire; between these pillars was a precious Stone, called an Amery, more rich then the heart of man can perceive: in the midst of which stood a Head of Brass, set upon a rich pillar. Valentine wondering at the riches of these objects, fixed his eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it should publicly open concerning his birth. At length, when every voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this manner. Thou famous Knight of Royal Parentage, art called Valentine the valiant, of whom it may justly be said, there was never the like appeared before me; thou art the man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady Clerimond; thou art Son to the Emperor of Greece, and thy Mothers Name is Bellisfant sister to King Pepin of France, who by wrong suggestions hath been banished her Country; and Husbands bed; know this, thy Mother

ther is in Portugal, in the Castle of Ferragus, who hath had the keeping of her these twenty years: Pepin is thy Uncle, and the Wild man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy Natural Brother, you two were delivered by the Emperors Bellisant, in the Forest of Dyleance, and being brought forth, thy companion was taken away by a Ravenous Bitch, and by her he was nourished in that wood, amongst the rest of her whelps, and never sucked he any other: for thy part Valentine, thou wast found the very same day in that Forrest by King Pepin, who hath nourished thee tenderly, and brought thee up to mans estate: Further thus much I shall also tell thee, that this thy Brother here present, shall never have use of his tongue, till a thread be cut under the same, and then thou shalt hear him speak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou hast begun and thou shalt prosper, for my time is at a period first thou art come to enter into this chamber. And so bending it self towards him in token of reverence, it never spake more.

Valentine marking well all that the Head had uttered, set upon the holome of his Brother Orson, and Orson on his, and with kind embraces they counter-changed each other. The Lady seeing all this began thus to break out into speeches: Alas courteous Knight, I of all other ought most to joy at this your happy arrival, for by you am I freed of a ten years hearts grief, which I have hardly undergone hitherto. Again, by this Brazen Head I understand that you have ever been the man on whom my affections should rest, and whereunto I gently agree (if you please) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady (quoth Valentine) I accept you as my wife, who was given to me by your Brother the Green Knight, that was banished by my Brother Orson before the City of Aquitaine: only this I shall request, that as your Brother the Green Knight hath forsaken Mahomet, so you would do the like. Sir (quoth she) I shall gladly pleasure you in any thing you shall command me, and be obedient to your will in every point, whilst you and I shall live. And so great joy betided all the Inhabitants of this Castle, for they were right glad of the things, that the Brazen head had declared unto them. After this, the reputation of Valentine increased more and more, but all his former joy and gladness was suddenly eclipsed

by the treachery of her Brother Ferragus, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.

CHAP. XXXI.

How the Gyant Ferragus had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and Valentine, by the means of one Pacolet a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.

NOW shall you understand, that within this Castle where Clerimond was, dwelt a Dwarf (named Pacolet) which the Lady had nourished, and brought up of a Child, bestowing much cost to have him taught in schools: This Pacolet being of more age then nature, grew exceeding witty, and at last he studied the black-Art and therein grew so famous in Necromancy, that by enchantment he had composed a little Horse made of wood, in the head of which horse, he had so artificially conveyed a pin of wood, that every time he mounted on his back to ride abroad, he would turn the pin toward the place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same place without danger, for the Horse could run through the Air more swift then any bird. This Pacolet being in the Castle, observed the behaviour of Valentine, and when he had at time, he addrested himself for Portugal, to bear news to Ferragus, how all matters had passed at the Castle. So he betook himself to his wooden horse, and in a moment of time (setting the pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his desires wish, and related the story unto Ferragus. When Ferragus heard this tale, he grew exceeding angry against Valentine, for that he should have his Sister in marriage: also, he grew enraged at her, that she would grant her love unto him (being a Christian Knight) swearing by his Gods to take revenge upon them both: but all this while he dissembled unto Pacolet, bidding him return and bear this message to Clerimond, that the Kt. Valentine, who shall have her to wife, is right welcome, and that ere long I will come in person to visit them, accompanied with a gallant troop of souldiers, and then shall

their Puptial be royally solemnized, so Pacolet took leave and got him on his horse, and was in an instant come home again. When come, he presently went into the presence of the Lady Clerimond, and said unto her: Goodam, I have been in Portugal with your Brother Ferragus, who is glad of your choice with Valentine, and promiseth e're long to be here in person, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady Wood amazed, and at last began to answer him thus; Ah Pacolet, is this true that thou hast told? Alas me, the Gods defend my brother from plotting any treason against me, for I am well assured he could never abide a Knight of France, nor any other that is a Christian; I am right angry that thou didst not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had a serious business for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Christian woman, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my Brother Ferragus, in the Castle that he now holdeth.

CHAP. XXXII.

CHAP. XXXII.

How Pacolet hereupon made another expedition journey into Portugal to see the Lady Bellysana, Valentines Mother, and his returning back, and the news that he brought.

The Lady having ended her tale, Pacolet made her this answer: The Lady seeing you are so earnest, I shall for your sake make another journey into Portugal, and before to morrow mid-day I shall bring you tidings whether she be there or no. Valentine hearing him say so, replied: What thou canst not do, except the devil be in thee. At the Lady Clerimond said unto Valentine, let him alone, for he hath so provided that he will ride more then a thousand miles a day. Whereat Valentine marvelled much, and calling Orson unto him, he cut the thread from under his tongue, that binded his speech, which being done he spake presently, where he related the story of his life led in the forest, which held them the greater part of that evening. On the morrow, according as Pacolet had promised, he was found in the Hall before Valentine, saying



How Pacolet hereupon made another expedition to the same
 and in this manner: Sir, I am returned from Portugal, and
 have seen your Father in good health: Friend (quoth Valentine)
 thou art welcome, for it is the I only desire to hear of. Love (quoth
 Clerimond) be not too hasty, for if his Father should be better,
 we will go into Portugal to him, and then we shall have that our
 hearts desire. But surely (quoth Pacolet) your Father will come
 hither: I (quoth the Lady) will I stand in fear of him, lest that he
 should some treason against us. For this night I dream'd
 that I dream'd, at which I was very much terrified, and that it
 was: I dream'd I was in a great water, and that I was
 have perished; but it did seem to me a great task that I should
 thereof being put, whereby I was deliver'd from our present
 who with his rations took me up, and carried me to a place
 together. Love (quoth Valentine) give no respect to these dreams,
 for he is the relations of a merchant, and his goods are his
 but they trouble me very much, and I have a great desire

they entered into a fair Arroyo, garnished with great variety of flowers, reposing themselves some few hours in long dalliance, before we could leave them. And now shall hear the good news of our arrived Ferragus the Traitor, at the Castle of Clerimond.

The Lady hearing of his coming, presently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and said unto her: Sister, above all creatures living I have most desired to see you, tell me, I pray you, which is the Knight you mean to make your Husband? This, fair Brother, is the man. Whereupon Valentine saluted him in great reverence. Ferragus said unto him: Fair Knight, ye be welcome into these quarters, for the love of my Sister Cleopatra, for seeing it is to fallen out that you have conquered my Brother the Green Knight, and sent him into France, causing him to be Chastised, even to have I a great desire to be Baptized, to become a Christian, and follow your Religion.

Valentine hastened all these words which he had spoken; but under these fair promises he smothered treason, yet at last, Valentine began thus to say unto him: Well, it is reported to me, that within your Castle, for the space of thirty years, you have maintained a Christian woman, who is sister unto me, whom I would gladly see, her name is Bellissant, Sister to Pepin King of France, and wife unto the Emperor of Greece. By Mahomet's soul Ferragus, you say truth, and to the end your eyes may behold her, you shall go along with me into Portugal, so shall you rightly be informed whether he be the man you seek for, or no. O conspiracy, (quoth Valentine) and so Ferragus left him; and said unto his Sister Clerimond after this manner: Sister, my love for, I desire your advancement, more than any thing on earth, and now when you have found out to me, my and believe a friend of my faith, I thought, therefore to call on all my ours, my desire is that you should go with me into Portugal, and there with the content and solace of all my Nobles, we intend simply to spend the rest of our lives.



CHAP. XXXIII.

How Valentine and Orson were betrayed by the treachery of Ferragus; and how he committed them to prison, with their woful lamentations.

Ferragus having thus gotten their good wills to depart for Portugal, put all his ships in a readiness, and packing up all their provision, then put forth to Sea. Being now at Sea, Ferragus fell from all his former words of comfort, and began to plot the death of Valentine and Orson. In the dead time of the night, when the two Brethren were at rest in their Cabins, he roused them secretly to be taken forth of their beds, and committed them to hands, muzzling their eyes also, that they could not see. Now, when Jerimond saw what was done to her love, she fell into an extreme agony, and with watry eyes began thus to vent her lamentations: *Alas dear Valentine, our joys are suddenly turned into sorrow; thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, when thou art not only thus mistreated, but even in danger of thy life: O wretched son of my birth, for with much danger hast thou purchased my love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? Rent Heart, weep forth my eyes, when such a valiant baron, and most magnanimous knight must be thus tortured for my sake? When hast thou been the traitor I put in thee, by working to foul an act against my love? When hast thou led me at all joy and brought me an untimely death. Further, know this, that if you put to death these two knights, you carry to your grave the name of a villain. Let them alone, their death will work you small content: or if there be no remedy, spare them and seize first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, for I would not live to see such two innocents fairly put to death without desert. Psea, even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts sorrow she would have slain her self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.*

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate fit, gave strict com-
mand.

mand that she should be well attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a word with either of the Prisoners; and leaving her to her laments, the Christians both, Valentine and Orson fast bound in bands. Valentine perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how contrarily hath fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my youth in travel and danger, only to find out the Parents that begot me? and see now when hope had well nigh let an end to all my sorrows; I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine enemies that only seek my death. Alas Brother Orson, how suddenly are all our joys blasted, & our mirth turned into mourning: On this wise complained Valentine and Orson, but all this while are they on their way towards Portugal, and shortly after arrived at the Castle of Ferragus. Being there arrived, tidings was brought to the Lady Bellysaor, that two Christian Knights were come along with them as Prisoners: at which news she quickly left her chamber, and came to have a sight of them. When she was come near unto them, and had well re-viewed them, at last she said thus unto them: Children (quoth she) of what Country be you, and where were you born? Lady: (quoth Valentine) we be of France; and bode not far from Paris. Ferragus perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying: Lady, leave your questioning, for except they renounce their faith, they shall miserably end their days in Prison: And herewithal called unto him a Jaylor, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with bread and water. This misery was not sufficient, but more then that, certain churlish Barons standing by, smote those two Children with their fists and staves, nor did cease till after Ferragus had committed them: he gat him up into his Palace; and called forth his sister Cleimond unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear tears, which made him thus to say unto her: Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by Mahomet, you have too long doted upon the Biazon. Heed, as well appears it, in that you make your choice with one of a contrary Religion: but change your mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to husband, that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the Green Knight: next a Christian, whom our Father hath

Forbear I say, therefore) at. Obey ruled by my direction, and I will
 raise your Fortune, by matching you unto that puissant King
 Promper. Forget I say, these two Frenchmen; for shortly thou
 shalt see, I will make them shorter by the head. Whither (qd. Cleri-
 mond) it behoveth me to obey you, for I plainly see I must let go
 the thing I cannot have; for whereas force constraineth fear hath
 little power, and necessity often preventeth truth. These discour-
 ses finished, Ferragus departed with his Queen and other atten-
 dants, and entering the great hall, with very much honor and reve-
 rence they received the Lady Clerimond, the Queen thus saying
 unto her, Sister, welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight
 of you. Lady (qd. Clerimond) I give you millions of thanks, but
 know this, that I am right heavy and sad for this Christian life,
 that we come hither, under colour of friendship and love, brought
 over by my Brothers false promises, and now to be violent hand-
 led, as to be thrust into a dungeon, and also threatened to death.
 Whis Sister, even this, wounds my soul; and splitteth my very
 heart in sunder. Alas Sister, pity me, for one of these Knights
 should be my husband, amongst all men living, he is the comeliest,
 valiantest, and hardiest knight that liues upon the face of the
 earth. Again (said Sister) by force of arms hath he conquered his
 foe, and won my love, wherefore Lady, pity my distressed estate,
 and let me see that Christian Lady, which you have so long kept
 hid in this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) I shall gladly consent
 to your desire herein: and so bringing them together, the Lady
 Bellian said thus unto her: Lady, what is your will with me?
 I speak on, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say. Then
 thus, I bring you joyful tidings, and yet the end of my tale shall
 be as sorrowful, as the beginning is joyful: disclose this, that I am
 not ignorant of your estate and dignity, for you are sister to Philip
 King of France, and wife unto the Emperor of Greece. I have
 long since banished you his Country: soon after your exile you
 were in your robes delivered of two faire Sonnes, one of
 which was taken from you by a Wave, and the other you told you
 know not what. And this is true. Now Lady, your Children are both
 with, and I am told you intend to find them. At these words Bel-
 lian fell into a swoon for joy; Clerimond quickly recovered

her again, and then the Lady said unto her: Fair Damosel, how came all these things to your understanding? Then Clerimond related the whole story, how Ferragus her Brother by subtilty and Treason had put them into a dungeon. Belysant hearing her two Childzen were imprisoned by Ferragus, made great lamentation, insomuch that the Wife of Ferragus entered the Hall, to understand the cause of these mournful clamours; Clerimond told the Queen all, from point to point: Well (said the Queen) be appeased, and dissemble the cause from the King, for if he have any knowledge thereof, it will make him rather so much the worse, than better affected, either to them, or you.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How Pacolet the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.

As these three Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the Chamber came Pacolet the Dwarf, that was new come from his wooden Horse. When Clerimond saw him, he wept bitterly, and said: Alas Pacolet what injury have I done unto thee, that thou shouldst thus rob me of all my joyance, for I am well assured that thou mightest have given me warning of all these miseries. Lady (quoth Pacolet) be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest I am ignorant of all that hath befallen you, but seeing you have begun these bitter bickerings, I know my Act shall utterly forsake me, but I will find a remedy for you to abridge your self, and to that purpose I here beow all my services unto you, and Valentine, while life doth last, friend (quoth the Lady Belysant) If thou canst but free my two children out of prison, I shall acknowledge my self highly indebted to thee, and I will recompence thy labours evermore. Lady (quoth Pacolet) no more labouron care, but comfort your self, and ere long you shall smell your own dear crafty work to take such effect by my Act, that you shall have cause to remember me while you have a day to live.

CHAP. XXXV.

How by A t Pacolet set free Valentine and Orson from the prison of Ferragus, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the fair Clerimond.

The chanced upon a day that Ferragus made a great feast for all his Nobles, which day they passed in such rebelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themselves to rest. Being all at rest, Pacolet was still watchful to give the Ladies content, and coming to a great Tower, whose gates were brass, and surely locked, by his enchantment the gates flew open, and he entred thereinto: Anon he came unto the dooz of the prison, where the Ladies two sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the dooz, the locks brake, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark dungeon, and hearing the dooz open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present death: and at last Valentine began to weep, but Orson said unto him: *Woe contrage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for death: and sith it is so, be that first entred here, to lay hand upon me, shall dearly pay for his adventure: with that he laid hold of a great Iron Bar, that lay thereby: but at last Pacolet spake unto them, saying: Lords, fear me not, for I am come to set you free from this dungeon, wherefore make no noise, but follow me, and before the morrow Sun, I shall bring you both unto your Mother: Valentine at this speech rejoiced greatly, but Orson beholding him with an angry look, would not give any credit to his words: Pacolet at the fierce look of Orson, was much afraid, inasmuch that he gave back, but by the words of Valentine he was much recomfited, and Orsons fury abated.*

After this, Pacolet led them to the Chamber whereas these two forlorn Ladies sat in mournful tears: When he came unto the dooz of the Chamber, it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entred in, Pacolet so wrought with his charms, that

all that were thereabouts fell into a heavy and dead sleep, & knew nothing of their coming. Being in the chamber where as the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly fell in a swoond, speaking unto them never a word: But the Lady Clerimond pitiously said thus unto Valentine: Alas (fair Knight) this is the Mother that bare you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grievous extasie. Then Valentine embraced her, and took her up in his arms, and Orson also clasped her about the middle saying unto her: Sweet Mother speak unto me; & then he kissed her tender lips, but all this while she spake never a word, but at last they all three fell flat upon the earth in a swoond, and there lay panting for breath a long season, while the fair Lady Clerimond stood over them, bewailing this strange accident. At last, coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them, weeping: Alas my Children, for your sakes have I suffered more pain and anguish than ever poor woman was able to undergo, and you two the only cause of these my dolorous passions, but since the Gods have so ordained that I may once see you, and embrace you before my death, all my griefs are vanisht, and become no burthen unto me. But tell me, how have you been preserved ever since your birth, and in what Country, and with whom you have remained? for it would glad me to hear the event thereof. At last (she having ended her words) Valentine began the piteous story of all their miseries, even to that present hour. Valentine having finished his sad tale, by which the Empress Bellysant clearly knew that they were both her natural Children, wailling with many more tears than before, she would fain again have fallen into a swoond, but Pacolet prevented her, who was at that instant in the Chamber, saying unto her: Lady, leave these laments, and let us think how we may depart from Portugal, and so rid us out of the subjection of King Ferragus. Alas, said Clerimond, my love, remember the oath that you made unto me, to make me your wife. Dear Lady (qu. Valentine) what I have promised, I will perform, but at this present the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me near the heart.

These words of Valentines being ended, Orson said unto Pacolet, Go open me the door of Ferragus, and with these hands I will work his final downfall and overthrow; Pacolet answered, Come,

go along with me, and I shall gladly open it, to fulfil this your desire. But know this, if you murder him, you shall lose the love of my Brother the Queen's Brother, who may divers and sundry ways do us pleasure. Lady (quod Valentine) you say truth, and I agree unto this your wise and discreet motion, for I would not have you guilty of such a crime, as the death of this your Brother for to gain the world.

At this very hour they departed the City; and Pacolet opened the gates before them, and they followed them down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready rigged, and having a fair gulf of wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of Clerimond, whither being once come, they refreshed themselves with pleasures.



CHAP. XXXVI.

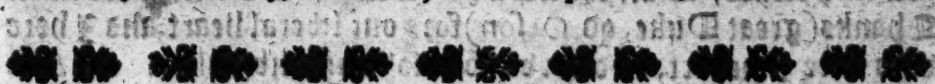
How Valentine and Orson escaped the castle of Ferragus, and sailed with the two Ladies into Aquitain.

Valentine being come, and safely arrived at this Castle of Clerimond, could not so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of Ferragus, fearing lest he should follow them, and put them into fresh dangers. Therefore to prevent all occasions of further mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Mariners there present, to victual their Ship afresh, and also provided good store of Munition to be in readiness upon all occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any suspicion: being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother Bellisant, and the Lady Clerimond, saying; that he would suddenly depart for Greece, towards Constantinople, to see his Father the Emperour, who without any just cause had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with Orson and Pacolet.

The next day they took shipping, and went on their voyage, and at break of day, the Emperour, according to his accustomed manner, went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to hear them their allowance

allowance of bread and water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the prisoners gone, he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him, Dread King, merc.; for this night I have lost the two Christian Knights, that you had delivered to prison. He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared, and said: O King, a greater mischief then this, is likewise hapned this night, for the Christian woman whom you have kept so many years, in this night escaped away, and hath carried along with her your Sister Clerimond. Ferragus understanding these harsh tydings, all enraged, began to tear his hair, that he was as a mad man among his Barons: and suddenly causing them to be armed, he made them to pursue and follow them: so he betaking him to his Club, issued out the foremost.

He was a mighty man, who was in stature about thirteen foot in height. Being out of the Town, he calling his men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none pass be met withal, but he demanded tydings of them, yet he could not hear of them, for Patelec by his Art was too subtle for Ferragus. At last, being tyed with pursuit, he swore that he would besiege the castle of Clerimond, for he did think assuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, he swore by Mahomer, that he would either find Clerimond and all her company, or else he would shake all Christendom, and so departed the Castle.



CHAP. XXXVII.

How King Ferragus assembled all his men of war to take revenge

and coupon Valentine and his sister Clerimond, and how

he followed them into Aquitaine.

When Ferragus had long laboured, and could hear no ty-

dings of the Christians, and his Sister Clerimond, he was

grieved, and in his fury sent for all his men of war, on every side,

presently to assemble themselves to take Sea, and follow Valen-

tine, to try if they could find him, and to bring him back again.

But

But

But

At when they had spent many daies, and effected nothing, they returned every man to his home, and rested from their fruitlesse toyl. Whilſt Ferragus and his forces were thus ſcowering the ſtowing ſea, Valentine and Orſon were entred the City of Aquitaine: being there they diſſembled their eſtate, and as private perſons lodged in the houſe of a Burgeſſ of the Town. Valentine would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke Savary, but Orſon thereunto would not agree, for he having a further reach of policy, ſaid thus unto him: Brother, I find by ſmall experience, that women are unconstant, therefore hearken to my advice, let us only ſee and try how the Lady Fezon ſtandeth affected towards me, and herein we ſhall try her conſtancy. Brother (quoth Valentine) I ſhall right willingly agree hereto: then Orſon took upon him the habit of a Knight Errant, and entred the great Hall, taking Pacolet the Dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he ſaluted him with all reverence. The Duke obſerving well his behaviour, took it to be Orſon that thus had demeaned himſelf; but after finding by his ſpeech he was like to be deceived, he ſaid, Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly adventure to do you ſervice, in any manner you ſhall imploer me. Knight (quod the Duke) I accept your proffered ſervice, and will give you ſalſary enough to content you, inſomuch that if you ſhall not depart my ſervice before I give leave, I ſhall give you ſuch riches, as all the ſtock you came from could never raiſe. Thanks (great Duke, quod Orſon) for your liberal heart, and I here beſeech you I depart, to deſerve your love and liberality.

Hereupon the Duke requested him to viſit his Court and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in preſent pay, one hundred and fifty pounds, making him withal a companion for the Court. Orſon thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himſelf worthy of this preferment, and ever ſo carried him at meat, that every man delighted in his company. Amongſt the reſt, the fair Lady Fezon, that was ſworn his wife, grew wondrous heavy and ſad, but ſhe knew not why, for ſhe knew not that it was Orſon whom ſhe had beheld, and thus paſſed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, Orſon took his leave for that time, and returned to his lodging, where his ſiſter & the Lady Cleinend had taken up their reſidence. Orſon being

being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the whole passage between him and the Duke, which when they heard, they much rejoyced thereat; but this joy lasted not long, for there came sudden news, that Ferragus had sent Messengers to the Duke of Aquitain, to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome news, presently provided both men and provision, to resist so proud an enemy. Ferragus according to his promise, suddenly arrived before Aquitain, even in the very same place, whereas his brother the Green Knight had pitched pavilions, when that Orson became his vanquisher. By this means much hurt redounded unto the Countrey and Provinces thereabout whereas the Sarazens Army lay in readiness, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue, and overrun the whole Countrey before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of Aquitain, being of a magnanimous courage, assembled all his men of war, and being thus put in a readiness, he suddenly issued out of the town, venturing to raise the Siege. Amongst the rest Valentine and Orson made their appearance, being also accompanied with little Pacoler, but these three were not known unto any at that time: where we will leave them a little, to hear what followeth.

osso osso osso osso : osso osso osso so

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of Aquitain was taken prisoner in the battel by Ferragus, and how Orson set him free by the help of Pacoler.

The Duke of Aquitain calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battel the next morrow; so calling up all his forces, & placing them in readiness there hapned a bloody battel before the City of Aquitain, and many a brave Leader on both parts, there lost their lives. The Giant Ferragus himself was amongst the thickest, gathering himself as near as he could unto his Standard-bearer. The chief men slain in this battel, were six valiant Knights, that is to say, Buarduin, Bondry, William, Galeram, Anthony the good

good Marshal, and Gloriam the harp: all near about the Duke of Aquitain, and they that had the chief command throughout his Camp. At his happening, the Christians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himself was beset with enemies so that none might come to succour him, yet in the midst of all these dangers, he bare himself most valiant, and cried, Aquitain, Aquitain, my Noble hearts fight on for Aquitain: but in the end all little abailed, Ferragus having once gotten a sight of him, came near, and at last took him prisoner, and led him to his Pavilion. Ferragus having thus bestowed the Duke, came up again to the battel, which struck such an amazement into the hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the field, especially, because they had lost the Duke, their Lord and Master. Valentine & Orson seeing them thus to waver, came up with all the speed they could, and cried out unto them with a loud voice: Valiant Wts. and men of Aquitain, shew your selves men, run not away in time of extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your reproach: be hardy and courageous once again, and let us try the fortune of the day.

These two Knights having thus done speaking, the people began afresh to gather up their scattered forces, & turned their forces once more upon the Sarazens, with a double courage. By this time tidings was brought into the City, that the Duke was taken prisoner, at which ill news the Lady Fezon lamented more then all the rest, saying with a heavy heart, shedding tears, Alas my father, now is your life in hazard, for from these Sarazens there is no hope of any mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left as a desolate Orphan. Alas Orson my love, thy long and tedious staying abroad hath much distressed me: for if you were here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, hewing forth his way with his sword. Orson on the other side, was not idle, for he had taken an oath, that either he would free the Duke from captivity, or leave his body amongst the rest. Pacolet the Magician, and Dwarf, promised Orson aid and assistance at need, and thus all busied, and nigh hand wearied, Orson put spurs to his horse, and ran violently through the battel, & escaped. Orson and Pacolet be-
ing

ing past danger, hurled away their own shields, and hanged about their necks the Shields of the Sarazens, set forth with the Image of Mahomet in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite through the Camp of the Pagans, (for Pacolet could speak their language right well) now are they come unto the Pavillion of Ferragus, where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have released him. But Pacolet perceiving the number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his charms into a deadly sleep. Being thus made fast, came unto the Duke, and said unto him: Come with us, and presently mount this horse, for we are come to let you free from the power of Ferragus: if you doubt what I am, I am that Knight, which in your Hall demanded wages of you, and you allowed me liberall. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here assembled, for I will surely be your guide through the wicked rout. Knight (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome man to my distressed bands, and therefore for your dangerous enterprize, in working my deliverance, I shall give you my fair Daughter Fezon in Marriage. Indeed (I must confess) I have given her not long since to a Kt. but he was wild and savage, and he never had the use of his tongue; but by reason of his long absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my daughter husbandless; but to be short, take her for this thy noble act, and with her I freely give thee half of my Dukedom. Thanks, (quoth the Kt.) such a gift is not to be refused; but let that pass, and let us make ready for our escape, that we may return unto your discomfited forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again through the Camp of the enemy, without disturbance. All this while was Valentine in the Army, demanding what was become of his brother Orson, but when he found no man that could tell him tidings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and sad, fearing lest he had been slain in the conflict of the battel.

Thus passed Valentine from place to place, to find out his brother Orson, and with a resolute mind rushed afresh into the battel, and as a man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand against him. Ferragus espying him so valiant, came up to close him, and having gotten him once in chace, never left him, until he had slain his horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, Ferragus seized on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet, that he should not escape from death, though there were not a man more to be had throughout the whole land; but this Oath was broken, for as he was leading his Prisoner Valentine fast bound along the field, Orson Pacolet, and the Duke of Aquitaine set upon him. Orson crying out, Let him not escape us; and therewithal put spurs to his horse and ran so fiercely against the Pagan Ferragus, that both he, and Valentine his Prisoner fell to the earth. The Giant Ferragus quickly regained his feet, and left Valentine, who fearing, began to run away. Orson spying him, cried out, Brother, return again, and fear nothing. Hereupon Valentine was new mounted: when the Christians saw the Duke again at liberty, their courages increased, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cried out aloud, Long live Duke of Aquitaine. This sudden noise much amazed the Sarazens, insomuch that Ferragus was glad to flee, and raise his Siege: When the men of Aquitaine heard the retreat, they recovered themselves again into the City. The battel being thus ended, Valentine and Pacolet returned to their lodgings, but Orson went along with the Duke to his Palace, whither being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter Fezon; being all assembled, he called Orson unto him, demanding of him his name; Sir, quod he, I am called Gregory: Then said the Duke thus before them all, Lo ds, I give you to understand, that above all men living, I am most beholding to this Knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for you Daughter Fezon, it is my pleasure, that above all men, you accept this Knight for your Husband; Daughter, you have good cause to love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled, agreed willingly hereunto, affirming, that she could do no less than submit to her Fathers will, and the rather, considering the dangers that by him had been prevented. Orson hearing all this, still concealed himself till he had further assured the constancy of the Lady Fezon; acquainting his Brother Valentine what he purposed to do, as ensueth in this next Chapter.

—696—696—696—696—696—696—696—696—

CHAP. XXXIX.

How Orson tryed the constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he married her.

ORson having a desire to try the constancy of Fezon, at last replied thus unto the Duke: Sir, for the honour you have vouchsafed me, I rest ever thankful for the same, but for your daughter, it were most requisite that I should see how she stands affected towards me, and likewise fit for her to make choice of such a man as is of equal birth with hers, and therefore if it please you, let her answer for her self. With these words he entred into the Chamber of fair Fezon, and sitting down by her, he took her by the hand, and said unto her: Lady, your beauty hath so entangled my heart, that without your favour and love, I as an unfortunate man: Your Father is willing that I shall enjoy you, if you please so also, then may I justly vaunt, that I have won the fairest Lady living, and will prove a constant knight whilst I have breath, if you consent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight (quoth the Lady) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is lost: It is true, I love all knights; yea, and all good men too, in the rule of honour, but as for him whom I mean to make my husband, him will I never change nor yet forget. Why? but fair Lady (quoth Orson) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to please you: Sir (said she) it is reason that I obey my Father, but if so be my Father will constrain me to break my faith, and forsake him that vanquished the Green Knight, I will rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my faith. Lady (quoth Orson) I wonder how you can set your affections on such a man, for he is of a wild nature and disposition, besides as your Father reporteth is dumb and cannot speak a word: True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful affection, to whom my faith is already fixed: and therefore stay your suit, for I will never alter nor change my mind from him.

Orson hereat grew wondrous joyful to hear the wise answer of Fezon, and took his leave of her, and came again to the Duke, say-

saying: Great Duke, I am returned from your Daughter, for she hath given me an utter denial, saying, that she will never have another husband than he that conquered the Green Knight. Quoth the Duke, care not for her denial, for she shall not rule her own will, but be you a little patient this day, and I will talk with her myself. Thanks might Duke, quoth he, I am much beholding unto you, and so left the Court, and came to the lodging of his Brother Valentine, to whom he related the whole matter of his proceedings with the Lady Fezon: Brother (said Valentine) you now know and find her faithful, but let us go together to the Palace, for I am assured the Duke will give me good entertainment. Sir (said Orson) do as you please: Valentine clad himself in rich apparel, and Orson put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entered into Aquitaine, and thus accompanied with Pacoler, they went towards the Palace, and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his daughter, in the presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my command thus, in rejecting the Knight, of whose love I have made sufficient trial for he hath saved me alive? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to sollicite me no further in this matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my promise to him that vanquished the Green Knight: what greater shame can there be, than to break my promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the danger light upon you, only let me be innocent. As they were thus discoursing, the Duke espied Valentine and Orson coming towards him, whom he embraced and honourably entreated. Orson having saluted the Duke, passed toward the Lady Fezon, who received him with a smiling countenance, and said thus unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long absence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not come now in as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth Orson) I have learned to speak since I was with you last, and am the very same man, that yesterday courted you in your Chamber, all which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So Orson went into a chamber, and put on rich apparel, being thus attired, he entered the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and said: Son, pardon my rashness

nels, in that I would have given away thy love to another, for I was fully persuaded that thou wouldst never have returned. Sir (quoth Orson) I forgive you. When the Duke demanded how and where they had spent their time, since their departure: Orson told him their whole progress, and what dangers they escaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperour of Constantinople, and Belysant sister to King Pepin of France, whom they had lately found in Portugal. The Duke hearing that their descent was of Royal blood, was right glad thereof, and said, Knights, you are worthy all honour by reason of your birth, but I am sorry that your Father the Emperour, and your Uncle King Pepin, are so hardly besieged by the Sarazens, and that unless speedy aid be sent unto them, they will be forced to yield themselves. Valentine giving good ear unto this relation, grew exceeding sad, but Pacolet at last put him somewhat out of his dumps, and said: leave off your sorrowing, for ere to morrow night, I shall send you to Constantinople, but (quoth Valentine) it must be then by the Devils means. Sir (said Pacolet) mount you upon my wooden Horse, and try the event that will follow after. Valentine answered, that will I do, for I desire nothing so much as the sight of my Father, whom I never saw. Valentine on the morrow prepared for to depart: But before his departure, the Duke married his Daughter unto Orson, in the presence of the Lady Belysant, and the Lady Clerimond, with the consent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great triumphs, and in this assembly there was a spy, who observed all the proceeding, and gave intelligence thereof unto Ferragus. When Ferragus had received these tidings, he vowed by Mahomet to be revenged on them all, but especially on Pacolet, for stealing away his sister Clerimond, whom he so much loved, and had ranked her among the Christians.

CHAP. XI.

How Ferragus the Giant strengthened his forces by the aid of King Trepant, and the Enchanter Adrimain.

Ferragus being out of hope to get revenge on the two Knights, and his sister Clerimond, called unto him a Messenger, and

delivered to him divers Letters of State, especially one of them was to King Trompart, of whom he desired aid against his enemies, all which, if he could speedily accomplish, he would give unto him for his wife, his sister Clerimond. At the farewell of his Letter, he desired him to bring along with him the Enchanter Adrimain. Here leave we the Spant, and return to Valentine, who by this time is taking his leave for Constantinople. But in the end he said thus unto the Duke, and Orson his brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely Clerimond. Valentine (quod the Duke) take you no thought for her, for I shall have a fatherly eye over her, as well as I have over my daughter Fezon.

Valentine having taken leave, at last came to Clerimond, who loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his brother, Orson said thus: Brother, commend me to my father the Emperour, and to my Uncle King Pepin, and tell them ere long I will visit them. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall remember you, and so departed. Orson still remained in the Palace, but Valentine had a duty yet more to do, namely, to take his leave of his Mother; but when she saw him, she clasped him round with her arms, but not able to speak: Valentine perceiving her natural affection, recomforted her in the best manner he could, but all was in vain.



CHAP. LXI.

Of the plentiful tale the Emperess made to Valentine her Son, before his farewell to Constantinople, and what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.

Valentine being overcome with the lamentations of his Mother, at last said thus unto her. O Mother, leave off, be not so careful for me, for if I escape danger, I shall gladly see you here again, in the mean space take care of my fair Clerimond, and let her be assured of my loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been basely abused, and falsely banished my husbands bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperour, and also to my Uncle King Pepin, and say

say unto them, in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a man breathing, that will but once open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for me, and justly maintain my unspotted chastity. Mother (quoth Valentine) all this and more I shall perform, and ere many months have run their course, I shall cause my Father to receive you again, and ask you pardon for his rash proceeding. So now he takes his last farewell of his dear Mother, with this charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send Pacolet to bring tidings of all that had hapned.

Now taketh he his way to the Lodging of Pacolet, whither being come, Pacolet made ready his Wooden-horse, and mounting Valentine behind him, turned the pin the same way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted in the Air so swiftly, that ere the morrow at noon, they were in the sight of Constantinople. Valentine was wondrous joyful, that he was so near the place he so much desired to see, and by the help of Pacolet the Enchanter, came that night even to the great Hall, where the Emperour accompanied with King Pepin, sat both at supper. Valentine being come into such an unknown presence, grew very bashful, but the Green Knight sitting at the Table, with the Emperour and King Pepin, espied Valentine, and knew him, so did King Pepin take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperour: Great Emperour, behold here one of your own blood, a valiant Knight, and your own natural Son. The Emperour hearing this, was much amazed, and rising from the Table, made towards him, and kissed him; the Green Knight was the first that took him in his arms, and embraced him, then King Pepin next, and lastly the Emperour his Father, who was greatly ashamed at his foul fact, in banishing his unspotted and guiltless Wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant Blandiman, who well observed Pacolet, ever since he saw him in Portugal, and at last he went unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistress, the Lady Bellisant. Pacolet satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great joy and gladness was heard about the City for the love of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperours Son, the valiant Knight. Valentine seeing such continual recourse of all estates gathering

thering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, & Barons, here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my person, I cannot yield unto you any other recompence but thanks, and a special love unto my Uncle King Pepin, who hath ever fostered me, even from my cradle, and had it not been for him I had perished by reason of a sharp edict published by my Father, who by the false suggestion of a dead Traitor, banished my Mother from his bed and country. Wherefore to clear her innocency, I (as her natural Son) offer my body in combat against any false Traitor whatsoever.

CHAP. XLII.

How Valentine and the Green Knight were taken prisoners in the battel of Constantinople, by the Souldan Moradin and his men,

When the Emperour perceived his Son to be so much moved for the dishonour which was done unto his mother the Empress, he wept for very grief of heart, and said thus unto his Son: Alas my Son, I have no doubt of thee to be my Son, neither of thy manhood, in offering to revenge her wrongs upon the Traitor that accused her, but he is fallen already by the sword of a Merchant, in the presence of thy Uncle Pepin, my self, and divers others of high estate. At his death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers and sundry Messengers into all Nations, to hear tidings what is become of her; but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired wish: therefore I pray thee, if thou canst, tell me some glad tidings of her. Father (quoth Valentine) I know somewhat, for yester night I both saw her, and spake with her in Aquitain, telling him besides, that Pacolet the Enchanter had suddenly brought him thither by Art, rather then good speed. The Emperour hearing such gladsome news from his Son, caused great triumphs throughout the City of Constantinople. When the Sarazens heard such shouts and rebelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himself in a readiness. The Souldan round besieged Constantinople, furnishing up all the Inhabitants most lamentable to behold. At last these tidings came to the ears of Valentine

rine and the Green Knight who arming themselves, came into the City: and said: Lords, you well perceiue the extremity in which we are, be yet couragious and stand to it, and there is hopes of recovery, wherefore follow my counsel, issue forth some number of you to forrage for some victuals, whilst I accompanied with 2000 men, set upon the Sarazens. They did as he advised them, & within short time they behaved themselves so valiantly that they gained from the enemy 300 Chariots laden with all sorts of victuals. Having thus seized the victuals, they were conducting the same into the City, but the Soldan sore vexed at these his losses, got betwixen the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from entrance, but King Pepin espying their policy, and how they had stopped up the passages, presently couched his spear, and ran upon the Soldan so violently, that he bare the proud Wagan to heath, then pulling out his sword, he smote at one Archillon, a very valiant commander, with such force, that he struck him out of his sad-



ble. Valentine and the Green Knight, perceiuing the great courage of King Pepin, & what fortune he had in the field, at that present entered freshly into the battel, and with a resolute courage, even in the presence of the Soldan, he helmed down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrown, Valentine addressed him against the Soldan himself, and with his spear he so encountered him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his Horse. Moroldas, one of the chief Commanders was slain; and his Admiral taken prisoner by the Green Knight, with other exploits performed on both parts. But mark what folloows, these two Knights were so triumphant in their uncertain victory, that they pressed the enemy so far within danger, that when they would return they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Soldan.

The Soldan having gotten them in bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his Mahomet, that they should never escape with life, but gave present commandment to raise up a Gibbet before the City walls, and presently in the sight of all his enemies, to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Green Knight in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and return to those Christians that had gotten great booty of victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountered by the Sarazens Army. In which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth, men, women, priests, clerks, and all degrees. When the Pagans saw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their prey of victuals, & safely conveyed it into the City, although with the loss of many a life. The Emperour was exceeding heavy for the loss of his War-like men, especially for his Son Valentine, and the Green Knight, so heavy and so sad also was the worthy King Pepin. Pacolet seeing these two Peers take the matter so heavily, recomforted them again, saying on this manner: Lords, leade off your lamentations, for it shall fare better with Valentine and the Green Knight than you can imagine. Friend (said the Empe-

Emperor) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy estate. Sit
(said he) shortly you shall make trial of my love and respect to-
wards you: so he betook him to his wooden horse, and departed to-
wards the Soldans host, and came thither just at the instant that
the Soldan came to judge Valentine and the Greek knight, where
how it was prevented, you shall hear in the Chapter following.

How Pacolet by Enchantment delivered Valentine and the Greek
Knight out of the bondage of the Soldan, and how Pacolet con-
quered the Soldan, when he had him upon his horse, and instead
of carrying him into Portugal, brought him into Constantinople,
where he was married.

ALL being assembled, as aforesaid, the Soldan began thus
to speak: I love here I present before you these that most in-
cumber the mighty Empire of Ferragus, and that which most you
ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his religion,
and for that cause my judgement is, that he should be put to death,
and from him receive punishment fitting his offence. And as for
other matters, let us never doubt but let them both have instant
death to morrow morn. Whereupon the Soldan set it so, where
resolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan entered his pavilion to
supper, where being set, Pacolet and Valentine both in the
name of Mahomet, Pacolet (quoth the Soldan) thou art a Christian,
how canst thou be here? he answered, Sir (said Pacolet) might well,
and by the sword of Islam to bring it you please to be the same might
gladly (said the Soldan) I preside begin, then Pacolet began him
singe, out of the hearing of his attendants, and said: Sir, know
this, I am lately come out of Portugal, and sent by the duke of
Ferragus, whose heart is on fire with the love he beareth to you;
long hath he conceiv'd your beauties, but having no power
longer to keep silent the secret of his passion, he hath committed to
me the love of her that, and what she saith, not utter to any other
but my self. Again, Ferragus is in Aquitaine, that an opportunity

it would be omitted. Therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to expostulate, for upon my horse will we suddenly arrive in Portugal, and bring you to the fair Ladies sight. Pacolet, thou hast more gladdened my heart, then all the worldly treasure can afford: true it is, she is the only woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my wishes. The Soldan caused Pacolet to be highly feasted, so on the morrow they went on towards their journey, but mark what followed: Valentine and the Green Knight you must conceive, were both in the Babilion, and were right glad that they had gotten a sight of Pacolet, but durst not make any show thereof: and Pacolet on the other side, deemed himself a flatterer to the Soldan, in eating, drinking, and reveling at the Soldans Table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Soldan, in hearing of all; Sir, how dare you venture your noble person so near to this Green Knight, and not rather give him his desert, for of all men living he is most dangerous: first, for the wrongs that he hath committed against his brother Ferragus, bereaving him of Clerimond, and giving her in Marriage to a Christian King. next, he hath renounced his Mahomet: these things considered, it is fit that he should dye, were there no more men living. Friend (quoth the Soldan) to morrow morning they shall both be hanged: Then the Soldan commanded the prisoners to be strongly guarded upon pain of death, and so withdrawing him to his chamber, left Valentine and the Green Knight under the conduct of those that most desired their deaths.

In the dead time of the night came Pacolet unto Valentine and the Green Knight, and first freed them of their bands, and by art so charmed all their Warders, (who slept securely) that he brought them past all danger. Having thus set them at liberty, about the dawning of the day he came to the Soldans Tent, crying out to dound him, that he awaked him, and then Pacolet began thus to say; untill now Sir, little I perceived your love to the wife of Ferragus, rising for her sake you are loath to break one hours sleep: whereunto the Soldan replied, thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearful dream, & thus it was: I perceived a Crow did bear me swiftly through the Air, and as he was flying along with me, another great Bird met me, and struck at me with his

his bill so hard, that the blood forthwith issued out in abundance, now this dream maketh me much to fear that Ferragu hath some intelligence of my desires, and means to revenge himself upon me. Away Sir (qu. Pacolet) with this childish fear, will you therefore neglect the love of such a beautiful Lady? B. Mahomet (qu. the Souldan) thou sayest truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this charge: Be he secret, if my Uncle Bryan ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with Pacolet. When Pacolet took the Souldan behind him, upon his wooden horse, and turning the pin, the Horse rose up into the air so swiftly, that in a little space they were come to Constantinople, even in the Emperors Palace. The Souldan perceiving Pacolets horse to make a stay, said thus unto him: Friend, are we at our journeyers end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in Portugal, in the Palace of King Ferragu. B. Mahomet (said the Souldan) the Devil hath born us hither very quickly. Well (said Pacolet) enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will hast into the Chamber of the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought unto her bed: Do so, quoth the Souldan, for I am even well near ravished with joy, and shall think each minute an hour, till I have my desire.

Pacoletteth the Souldan in the Hall, attending the coming back of Pacolet, while he in the mean space, maketh towards the chamber wherein the Emperour lay: being come to the door, he gave a great blow against it, insomuch, as the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperours rest: Friend (qu. Pacolet) fear not, for I am Pacolet, newly come from the Souldans Host, where I have set at liberty both Valentine, and the Green Hat, who were condemned to dye. Besides, say unto the Emperour, that I have brought along with me the Souldan himself, to be in Portugal: Wherefore he may now be revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved death. The Chamberlain told the Emperour all these things, and King Pepin also, so arming themselves, they came into the Hall where the Souldan sat. The Souldan perceiving himself betrayed, cried out with a loud voice: Thou false Pacolet, Traitor to my person, I now to be revenged upon thee for thy dishonour practice towards me, and there-

withal drew forth his sword, and like a mad man ran up and down the Hall, striking the very stones to pieces, that he made the fire to flye from those Tenebra's wall. As he was in this making fit, the attendants came to ward him with 26. eyes. The Souldan seeing them, defended himself so fiercely, that he slew the Squire that attended upon King Pepin: This did he his, fired the courage of the King, that he made a blow at him, and killed him to the earth. Being fallen, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came Valentine and the Green Knight, who finding the Souldan there in bonds, was very joyful.

The Emperour and the King seeing Valentine, were joyful for his deliverance, giving great thanks to Pacolet for his care over his Son, and withal said: Pacolet, one strain more of the horse must I demand, you shall see how I shall get you into my hands. I shall instantly transport you into my hands. But I bidde, let that pass, and referre unto the death of the Souldan, for if he escape your hands at this time, a world of troubles will follow: so that very soon they proceeded to judgement, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in the very sight of all his Christian Host.

This done, he began to see as men confounded and amazed to see him there hanging, & wondered how he came within the City; but at last, Bryan his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traitor Pacolet. After they had long lamented the death of the Souldan, they gathered themselves to console, and in his stead chose his Uncle Bryan Souldan. After all these things done, Pacolet took his leave of the Emperour, and returned into Aquitaine, to comfort the Lady Clerimond, as he promised: but before his departure, Valentine came unto him and said: Pacolet, at your coming into Aquitaine, salute from me my Mother Helysant, and my loving Lady Clerimond, my brother Orton, and the good Duke of Aquitaine, with the rest of his Nobles, and adde all the rest deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand our whole proceedings here. Sir, said Pacolet, all this shall I willingly perform: so taking his horse, he leapt upon him, and he flew up into the air as swift as smoke.

The next morning Pacolet was come to his journey's end, and find=

finding the Duke of Aquitaine, the Emperors Belysant, Orson, and
 Gloriond; all in safety he saluted them all, and delivered them
 Wetterd, who said: Lady, your Son Valentine greeteth you well,
 desiring you that the Emperour would gladly see you, confessing
 his unthrift given to a Traitor; about your banishment, who
 hath requited it with the loss of his life; wherefore he proueth
 that so soon as he can free his Country from the incursions of the
 Saracens, he comes himself in person, and then forthwith being
 with the Queen Belysant, whom Orson banished. At the same
 hearing these joyful things, suddenly fell in a swoon: but Or-
 son perceiving it, suddenly stretched her up and his arms, and be-
 ing somewhat come to her self, she said: my Child, I am joyful
 overcome with joy, in that I understand I am proved innocent of
 such a horrible crime, as I was lately accused of: but I long to
 see the Emperour, whom if I might but once again behold, I should
 not longer desire to live, for I am well enough revenged, and my
 accuser hath justly suffered a most shameful death for his Treas-
 chery.

CHAP. XLIV.

How King Trompart came before Aquitaine, to succour Ferragus,
 and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betrayed
 Pacolet; and how the King of Inde caused King Trompart's head
 to be struck off, and how he would have married with Cleri-
 zmond; and how Pacolet was revenged on Adrimain, in the shape
 of a woman: and how Ferragus was slain, and how Orson and
 the Duke went with their Army to Constantinople, to succour
 the Emperour; and how Orson led along with him his Mother:
 and how all the Pagans were slain before Constantinople: and
 how the Emperour received his Son Orson, and his Wife Bel-
 ysant, with joy.

Pacolet being arrived in Aquitaine, at that same time that King
 Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus against the Christians;
 at whose coming Ferragus began thus to salute him: Famous K.

of our coming I am glad, hoping by your assistance to get back my sister Clerimond, & to be revenged on all those that have detained her, Ferragus (said he) Trompart doubt nothing, for I have brought with me Adrimain the Enchanter, whose skill shall confound Pacolet in his own Art. Thanks gentle he. I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but get Pacolet into my hands, I shall reward him liberally. Sir (qd. Adrimain) put your trust in me, and so I take my leave, and so betook him to his magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongst the rest, he laden himself with brannals, and took his way towards Aquitaine, coming thither, he craved entrance of the gates to sell his brannals, which was easily granted. After he had sold all, he went into the Palace where he chanced on Pacolet, whom Pacolet knew well. Adrimain (qd. Pacolet) you are welcome, from whence come you, and what is your errand? Then (said Adrimain) you know that long I served he. Trompart, but by fate I am fallen into a great mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife and killed him: Now fearing death, I am expelled the Court and for this cause I fled towards you for succour, & will prove unto you a faithful servant, so you be pleased to accept of me. Adrimain, said Pacolet, I am content let it be so, make thee good cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, Adrimain saw the fair Clerimond pass through the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady it was: Then (said Pacolet) it is the Sister of Ferragus who must be married to a right valiant Knight: Whilst they were thus in conference, came Orson unto them, and said: Gentlemen, I could gladly wish that one of your Art would shew somewhat to delight the assembly.

At whose words, Adrimain drew up a Cup above a Pillar, in such wise, that through the Palace (seemingly to all the company) ran a River, furnished with all sorts of fish, little and great. When the beholders saw the water to come so strongly against them, they were afraid of drowning, Pacolet beholding this feat, amongst the rest, began a song, and in that song a Charm, that it seemed to all the beholders, that a great Hart ran thorow that River, overturning all things that stood in his way: After this Hart ran Hunters with their Hounds. This made many of the beholders leap

after,

after, thinking to have taken the Hart: but Pacolet by his Art made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport (qd. Orson) was very well performed: and so the company breaking up, Pacolet led Adrimain to his Chamber, to be with him, but proved fatal, for towards midnight, Adrimain so enchanted all within the Court, and with them Pacolet, that he had time to work all that he desired. Afterward he went towards the house of Pacolet, & getting him, came into the Chamber of Clerimond, and by Art caused her to rise, and make her ready, and setting her on the Horse behind him, came unto a window, turned a pin, and suddenly he arrived in the Tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cryed out aloud, saying: Great King, sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady Clerimond, whom I have stolen from Aquirain, and with her Pacolet's horse. Now, said the King, I well perceive thy lobe: is this the Sister of Ferragus? Now, said Adrimain, and I have stolen her away, and also betrayed Pacolet my fellow Magician, for he shall never be master of his horse again. I, but (said the King) art thou acquainted with the manner of his horse? O, long since, worlde King, and by vertue of the Pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known unto K. Trompart, he thought to make experience of the horse himself, and taking the Lady Clerimond behind him, would transport her into his own Country, and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his arms, (for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted sleep) and set her on the horse of wood. All this Adrimain was eye-witness of, and said thus unto him: O Lord if you fail one jot of the true use of the horse, both your self and the Lady are in very great danger. Fear not that squab Trompart, and so turning the Pin, he mounted swiftly into the Ale, and before the next morning he was 200 miles on his way, but not at his journey's end, for not awaked the Lady Clerimond out of her own Enchanted sleep, who seeing her self so delayed, fell suddenly into a swoond, this chance struck to the heart of King Trompart, for he was afraid lest she had been dead, and so turning the pin he stoped the horse in a fair green field by a fountain, then taking the Lady from the horse, he laid her on the grass, and took a little water, and cast it on her face,

back; and the Lady recovered, being recovered, she made such
 guttous lamentations, that King Trompart was well nigh out of
 his wits: within this place there was a shepherd, of whom King
 Trompart required some what to eat, which he gave unto the La-
 dy, who eat thereof, and was refreshed: and at last being come a-
 gain unto her speech, she weeping uttered these words: Unhappy
 I should be all Creatures, for I have lost my joy by accursed treason.
 Alas Valentine my love, cursed be he that hath separated us. Trom-
 part hearing her so clamorous, reproved her roughly, saying: La-
 dy, leave off these foolish moans of the Christian boy: or else I
 shall separate thy head from thy body: Is it not better for thee to
 be my wife, that our sole Lord of all this jurisdiction, then to have
 a beggler start up, that hath neither Land nor Living; and with
 these words he would have kissed her, but the Lady disdain-
 ing him, bit him with her fitt upon the mouth: at which sight
 this strange and unlookt for dishonour, put King Trompart
 into such an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and
 set her upon the horse again, and turning the way the contrary
 way, presently, instead of carrying her into his own Country, he
 lighted in Inde, in the midst of a market place, kept there that day
 the people seeing such a strange sight, marvelled much thereat:
 The Lady Cleopatra by this time, knew the horse to be Picoles,
 and said: How am I falsly betrayed; and Picoles robbed of his
 horse, but my dear Valentine, he it is most sicketh at my heart.
 I know shall I never see thee more: Trompart (thought for all this)
 that he had been in his own Country, still hearing down her pite-
 ous laments with bitter words. But much what followed a stan-
 ding was brought to the King of Inde, and what had happened;
 who commanded him to be brought before him: but this fell out
 ill for King Trompart, for the King of Inde, with him wallowing
 Trompart being come before the King of Inde, he bid him wel-
 come, for now are he that put my brother to death: wherefore I
 will be revenged on thee; and so caused his horse to be smitten off.
 After which he was added into the Kings Palace: where he did in
 his own person, and he had said: Alas! I know now of thy true
 name; but the bright splendour of your face, it hath enthralled
 my heart; wherefore if so you please to be my Wife, I will make
 you

you Queen of all this spacious continent. Sir quoth the you is all graciously, but to take any man to Husband, I have made a vow how to refrain during the space of one whole Year, whereto please it you to let my vow be accomplished, and that time being run out then will I willingly consent thereto. Well, said the King thy answer is reasonable, let it be as thou hast said perform thy vow, and remain within my Palace, and he commanded that her attendants should be as great as if she had been his Queen: allowed her a Chamber of state, into which Chamber he caused to be brought the wonder Horse that carried her thither and being there, he placed it in the secretest place he could devise, and will desired she might be freed out of that danger. How to have we her a while, and return to picoler, and look back also to Aquitaine: and see the mourning that is made for the Lady Clerimon.

The night after Adrimain had betrayed Picoler, great lamentations were made for the fair Clerimon, throughout the City of Aquitaine. Moreover, when Picoler found Adrimain absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber, wherein the Horse stood, he suddenly missed it: all this so falling out, Picoler fell into a most grievous passion, inasmuch, as had not Orson at that instant come to, he would have destroyed himself.

Picoler being thus tormented by Orson, and beholding the general sorrow for the brautious Lady Clerimon, he began thus to comfort them: Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traitor Adrimain, by whom we are all thus wronged. Here withal he departed, and apparelled himself like a gallant Ward, and took his way to the Host of Ferragus. Being come among the Army, many Pagans praised for her love, but ever more Picoler excused himself, and said: Pardon me, I pray you for I am promised already, to be Enchanter Adrimain, and so they let her pass on. At last Picoler came to the Tent where Adrimain was, at which Adrimain stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in love, that that night he retained him into his Chamber, but Picoler, no whit to seek of his loves, made somewhat lamentation, and said: My Lords know this I have been desired of many, but I think myself the worst of all to be self-cherished. Daughter (quoth Adrimain) for nothing, make good cheer, and be merry, for I have a good stomach.

Stomach to thee and will use thee well. ~~But~~ he committed the Maiden to one of his servants, to be served with all the dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the Tent of Adrimain, while Adrimain is in the tent of Ferragus, Pacolet demanded of the servant of Adrimain, what was become of King Trompart: The servant said: I think he is returned again into his own Country, and carried along with him the Lady Clerimond upon a horse of wood, that my Master had given him. Pacolet hearing this, was wiled at the heart. By this time was Adrimain come unto his Tent, laying to Pacolet: Daughter, is it time to go to rest? see here is the bed we mean to sport in: Your will be done, said Pacolet. Then Adrimain put off his cloaths, and went into the bed, Pacolet so enchanted him in so strong a sleep, that wake he could not, till the morning. As he delt with Adrimain, so he did with all round about him and putting off his womans attire, he clad himself in all the richest cloaths that Adrimain had, and after, with his own sword cut off his head, and bare it alway with him. Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heavy sleep. This done, he entred into the Tent of Ferragus, where he suddenly made him leap out of his bed, and cloath him: and tying him in his girdle, made him run by his side like a Spaniel, till he came even to the very entrance of the gates of Aquatun.

When Pacolet was come to the gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons, and spying Pacolet, they said unto him: Where is Clerimond, that thou bringest not her again? he answered: Lords, be patient a while. I cannot shew you all at once: know this, I am fully revenged on Adrimain, for here I have brought his head, and here is Ferragus, who by my Art I have also surprized, as you may see. Then said Orson, you have done very well. Nay Lords, more yet have I to say, which is, I have enchanted asleep the whole host of Ferragus, therefore if ever you mean to have a resistless victory, go now. What say you, my Lords (quoth Orson) methinks Pacolet hath bin advised us, therefore let us go on: so they slaughtered all that lay

lay before them, and put Ferragus into a most filthy, dark, and loathsome Prison, until their return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into Aquitain, and there commanded to have the Giant Ferragus brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said: Ferragus, if thou wilt here forsake thy Mahomet, and receive Baptism, then thou shalt live: which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely dye. It now (said Ferragus) I had rather suffer a thousand deaths: so he was suddenly beheaded. After his death Orson took leave of the Duke, and went towards Constantinople, to aid his Father the Grecian Emperour, and his Uncle King Pepin of France, against the unbelieving Sarazens, that had strongly besieged that City, but a little before his departing the Duke said thus to him: Worthy Knight, if you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company. Orson was very joyful to hear him say so, and gave him thanks (so taking some small time to set things in a readiness, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and valiant knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way the Empress Belysant much lamented the hard usage of her Lord, but Orson pitying her, said: Mother, leave of your tears, and only joy in that you have been falsely accused, which now will much increase your honour: But I fear most our entrance into the City, which, as I hear, is much troubled with Sarazens. Nay (said Pacolet) fear not that, for I will work a device to enter, and myself will go before and tell them so. Do so (said Orson) and tell Valentine the hard fortunes of Clerimond: Nay, (saith Pacolet, not I) I will be no bearer of such sad tidings.

Now King Pepin and the Emperour being strongly besieged, were in great distress for victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieved, but by the sword. Then Valentine knowing their great necessity, accompanied with the Green Knight, and a mighty band of soldiers issued out of Constantinople, and charged upon 200 Charlots of Victuals of the Pagans, and recovered the same with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this booty, they made their return towards Constantinople, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt

round about; on the one side with the Souldan, and on the other
 side with the King of Arabia, and thirdly with a King called Affi-
 ci. Amongst these companions fell out a terrible bloody conflict,
 but Valentine in single fight killed the King of Damagen and the
 Knight Glarian. The Green Knight also behaved himself val-
 lantly, for at one blow he struck off the shield arm of the King of
 Morien, and before that slew his brother. But all this valour little
 availed, for in the end they were both taken Prisoners, and led
 before the Souldan; who having them in his possession, assembled
 fifteen Pagan Knights to adjudge them to death. Valentine being
 thus in bonds, greatly lamented the woful state of the Lady Cle-
 rimond, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the
 rest, saying: I must now forsake you all, and never again behold
 your faces. The Green Knight seeing him so passionate, said: Let
 us dye in a good cause, and welcome death.

Now was the Souldan set in his chair of State, to proceed to
 Judgement: in the mean space, in comes Pacolet, to the midst of
 the throng, not known of any, and come and stood before the judg-
 ment seat, and kneeling down, said: Right dear Sir, know I am a
 Messenger from your Brother Gordari, the great King of Africa,
 who to your succour hath brought along with him four hundred
 Kings, and by me requireth, on which part of your Army they
 shall be ranked. Again he prays you, if you have any Christian
 Prisoners, to send them him, and he will send them into his own
 Country to wain the plough, and here stands a couple of fit instru-
 ments for that purpose. The Souldan rejoiced at these tidings, and
 commanded he should be highly feasted for that night: mean time
 Valentine and the Green Knight were glad of Pacolet's company.
 In the dead time of the night, Pacolet went unto them, and giving
 to each of them a horse, unbound them, and had them follow him.
 Being out of the enemies reach, Pacolet said thus unto them:
 Lords, he comforted, for in this Land is assembled the Duke of
 Aquitain and the Knight O-lon, the noble Empress, and the Lady
 Pezon: I, but said Valentine, why cometh not the Lady Clerimond?
 then answered Pacolet, she would have come, but being sea-sick,
 she was forced to return again to Aquitain: So Valentine for that
 time questioned no farther with him.

Then pacolet advised them all to go into the City of Constantinople, and on the morrow issue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy. In the mean space I will on the other side bestir my self, that the Host of the warlike Duke, shall come up, and give a fresh assault. Now the Souldan, seeing this, shall imagine it to be his Brother, the King of Argier. And Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast well advised, and so it shall be effected. Whia they departed, so pacolet took his way to the Duke of Aquitaine, who was yet on the Sea-shore, telling him that he had been with the Host of the Souldan, and how he had fled Valentine and the Green Knight. Then Orson answered, pacolet, there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is this, that to morrow in the morning, we assaile the Host of the Sarazens on the one side, and they of Constantinople on the other side, and so by that means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. When did the Duke draw up his men in order, & so kept themselves that night. The next morning the Emperor & his peopel diligently brought forth their men to the fight, and divided their Host into five Battels: The first was delivered to Valentine, the second to the Green Knight, the third to King pepin, the fourth to Millan Daugler, and the fifth to Sampson of Orleans. One that bare in his banner a Bear of Silver: At the break of day, these powers issued out of the City, to give an assault upon the enemy: being come into the field, they sounded their instruments, the noise thereof so affrighted the Sarazens, that they ran out of their Tents, crying, an allarum, an allarum. This battel was a great help for the Christians that day, yet the enemy had no cause to boast. King pepin behaved himself so valiantly, and cryed out to his Souldiers, S. Denis, S. Denis. Then a Sarazen cryed out to the Souldan, to retire, for the safeguard of their lives, for this night have we lost our two prisoners, and also there is coming against us a new supply of a great Army. Then the Souldan thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forwards, & raised up their courage again, & imagined that they enforced the Christians to fall back: but little appeared their power, for there came upon them the D. of Aquitaine with his forces, and assaulted them so fiercely, that they put to the sword all that did

came before them, and thus the Christians conquered.

When the battel was ended, and the Christians had recovered up their scattered soulders, Valentine & Orson came before the Emperour, doing unto him dutifull reverence. Father (quoth Valentine) here you may behold my Brother Orson, whom as yet you neuer knew, then the Emperour embraced him with tears, and so did the worthy King Pepin also. Fair Son (said the Emperour) you are welcome, for by you my joys are doubled. Then assembled together the Emperour, King Pepin, Valentine, Orson, the Green Kt. Blandiman, and Guidard the Merchant, he that vanquished the false Arch-Bishop. All these with great triumph set out to visit the Tent of the noble Empress Belysant and the Lady Fezon.

By this time they are come, when the Emperour saw his wife Belysant, he leapt off his horse, and in tears and rage, not being able to speak, he embraced her: and Valentine and Orson bare them company in their lamentations, so did also many of the rest there assembled. At last words took place, and the Emperour recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded against the Empress, requiring pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the fates to bring me unto your sight, I freely forgive all wrongs, but I long to see the man that robbed my innocency with his sword. Lorde (quoth the Emperour) this is he by whom your honor was polluted. Sir (quoth the Lady) you ought to be regarded for your service to the Empire of Greece, and King of France. For which I make you my Chamberlain, & give you yearly a thousand marks in gold. Lorde, I thank your bounty, and will attend you during life. When (said Valentine) mother I pray tell me some tidings of Clerimond, Fair son, Clerimond hath been stoln from Aquitaine, and given to King Trompart, that came to the Pagans aid. Valentine hearing this, lookt strangely upon Picolet, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have smitten him, but Picolet entreated him to be patient, for an Emballer hath stolen my horse away, but I am revenged on him, by cutting off his head. Valentine understanding these misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, grew into bitter passions for his life.

CHAP. LXV.

How King Pepin took leave of the Emperor at his departure from Greece, and how Orson went along with him. How Garnier fainted, and left the knife in the bed, and accused Orson falsely of Treason, and how the knife was found in the Kings bed, And how Orson claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of France) granted. And how Valentine in seeking Clerimond, arrived in Antioch, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon, and how Valentine after the conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of Antioch, and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the Lawless Love of the Queen Rosamond. And how the King of Antioch was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by Brandiffes his wifes Father, and how the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight were taken prisoners by Brandiffes.

These wars thus ended, K. Pepin took his leave of the Emperor and returned into France. Orson would needs go along with his Uncle Pepin, and spend the remainder of his days in his Service. The K. was content, & said unto him, I will make you high Constable of France, moreover, if it so chance that my young son Charles should decease before me, I will make you K. of France. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful, and along with me will I bear the Ladys Fez on the day of taking leave, came, and each embraced other with kisses and tears. But Valentine could not rest, for he had lost his love: wherefore I am resolved to seek my love, for whom I endangered my life, and by my sword I won her; her I bewail, & her will I recover again if she be alive: but if I find her not, short and woeful will be my days, & so he called Pacolet to him, and said: Willst thou serve me, and be my Companion in this unknown task? Sir (quoth he) willingly, and am ready whensoever you shall set forward. Then Valentine made all things in a readiness for his departure, and now hath taken Sea and left his Crown and Country, only accompanied with three attendants. Now leave we him, and speak of King Pepin,

Pe, in, who by this time is seated in Paris, and was honourably received: But above all, the valiant Orson was highly esteemed, inasmuch that he had even all the command of the kingdom delibered over unto him. If ought was to be brought before the King, Orson was the man to be sued unto.

This greatness of Orson fretted Haufray and Henry (of whom you have heard before) to the heart, inasmuch that they plotted a means how to take away his life, saying, it was much to their indignity that Orson should be thus preferred before them, being sons unto the King: surely, says the one to the other, his glory cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his overthrow. I but (said Haufray) understand me, we have two nephews, sons unto ourselues sister, to wit, Florence and Garnier, these are both hardy & fierce, and by them methinks some plot might be set on foot again, they are fit members to execute any villaine, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his private Chamber: now either of these may enter into the Kings Chamber, and murder him in his bed, and such a deed being done, it will surely be laid to Orsons charge, for he onely hath the guard of his person. If this can be effected, Orson will surely be condemned to death, and the Realm wholly light into our hands. In this it is necessary to use secrecy.

Upon this resolution, they sent for these two instruments of murder, to acquaint them with the treason, and being come Haufray said unto them: Sire, I and my Brother have laid a plot to do us good, and raise you to honour, which thing we chuse rather to offer unto you, for that you are allied unto us, and therefore we respect you before others. This it is, you know our Father the King never loved us, but hath ever advanced strangers, and left us lightly regarded: these things considered, my Brother I and you two brothers, descended from our Uncle, determine to put our doing Father to death, & so we may share the Land into our own government. This thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, and I think you, Garnier, to be the fittest for it, because you being Usher in the Kings Chamber, you may convey your self behind some arras, and when the King is in Bed murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King

is slain, the fact will be laid upon Orson, for he only hath the charge of his body, and so we shall quickly get him adjudged to death; and as for little Charles, we shall do well enough to make him a way. Uncle (said Garnier) doubt not, but that I shall undertake this enterprise. Shortly after, Garnier on a night, when the King was at supper, got a knife, and secretly entred into the Kings Chamber, and hid himself behind the Hangings. When the hour of 8 Kings going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard, and Chamberlain, as the manner was: the King being laid, every man departed, save only Orson, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: Orson seeing the King asleep, without making noise, left him, and laid himself down upon a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the night was come, wherein Garnier assayed (having the knife ready) this bloody enterprise: but being come to the beds side, ready to lift up his arm to strike the fatal stroke, he thought the King would awaken, and so trembling for fear laid him down by the beds side, and durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) possess'd with fear, he put the knife within the bed, then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orson all the while slept soundly, misdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful dream, which was, that one would have robbed his wife of honour: also he thought, that he had a sister he saw two Herrons, who fought with a Hawk but the Hawk defended her self so valiantly, as he had slain the two Herrons, had they not been assisted by a multitude of little birds, and the Herrons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle rescued him.

At this Dream Orson awaked and was much astonied thereat, saying: The Gods preserve my Brother Valentine from Treason. By this time the day broke and Orson softly stole out of the chamber, fearing to awaken the King. When Garnier saw Orson gone, he also followed soon after, and took his way towards the chamber, where he found the two brethren, who longing to hear the news, Garnier (quoth they) tell us what is done? Lords, (said Garnier) I would not do the like again for all the gold in France, and yet I have not hurt the King, for still as I was lifting up my hand to strike, fear and horrour did so affright me, that I durst no more

adventure. But I have advised me of another plot, and have of purpose left the knife in the Kings bed and this it is, we will accuse Orson of treason, and tell the King there are four Traitors, whereof Orson is the principal. Also, they will make away little Charles, and so wholly possess the Crown. To prove this, we will say, that for this purpose Orson hath conveyed a knife into the Kings bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the door, heard all their conference. Garnier said Haufrey you say well, but if Orson deny it, you and your brother shall crabe combat against him, say that by such adventure you come by the wyse, my brother and I shall find men enough to rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was treason laid the second time for Orson the innocent. The next day the King being at dinner, attended by Haufrey and Henry, who shewed good countenance to Orson: when Garnier saw his time, he came before the King, saying: Most thy King, your Grace hath bestowed on me many Kingly favours, wherefore it is my duty to open unto you a Treason which lately I chanced to hear, and to the end you may have a care of your person, I will betray unto you the practisers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on Orson first, for he was the principal Traitor, the number in all are four, Orson was the man should kill you in your bed with a knife, and that your Majesty may the better credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certain place, and heard Orson say, the knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your bed: now if it please you either to go or send you shall find my words true. Sir (said Florent) my Brother speaketh nothing but truth. The King hearing these words, beheld Orson with many strange countenances, and at last said: False and disloyal man, can such a thought enter into thy breast, as to take away my life, whom I have more respected then my own children. Hege (qd. Orson) be not lightly carried away to believe this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall prove evnly the author of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the King) for if the knife be found in the bed, I will crabe no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he said: Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded as at this present. Sir (said Myllon Dugler) I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that

that Orson is guilt; of the Treason against your Majesty. (out said the King) if we find a knife in the bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go make trial. So the King went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many witnesses, and being there, they found the knife, as Garnier said: Alas, said the King, in whom may I trust, when my own kinsman seeketh my life? but I now he shall suffer a shameful death. With that a valiant knight named Simon, came to Orson (which loved him well) and said: Alas Sir Aye and save your life, for the King hath found the knife in his bed, and so the King hath vowed our death. Orson said, I fear nothing. The King entered the Hall where Orson was, guarded with fifty one knights, and to assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgement.

Orson being brought before the King and his Lords, he said unto them: My Lords, since my words cannot defend me I require but the custom of your Country which is, that when a man shall be accused of Murder or Treason, he might crave the Combat against his enemy.

Now for my part, I hold my self innocent, which I will maintain, if by your councils you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: and further, to clear my self, loe here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaseth you. Garnier said: Orson, I think you were better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reason to answer you in the field. Ah Traitor! there is nothing yet proved, but that a man that feareth not damnation, and desireth honour, saith so. Upon these words the twelve Peers of France caused Orson to be removed out of the place, and also the brothers his adheraries; while in the mean space the rest disputed the Question. At last it was adjudged that Orson's demand was reasonable, and that he ought to be heard. Then were the brothers called in again before the King, then Duke Myl'on demanded of Garnier, who were confederate with him in the Kings death. Lords (quoth he) I will not betray them for all the wealth in France: Garnier (said the Judge) I give sentence, that you and your Brother take up Orson's gage, and fight with him, for since you conceal the rest of these murderers, it is to be doubted that there is malice in the plot. Orson at this sentence

rejoiced

rejoiced, and cast his Globe down to these two Traitors, saying :
 Ho, here is my Globe that I cast down to these two Traitors,
 upon this condition, that if my case be lost, or by them conquered,
 I offer my body to your will and pleasure : Wise then, said the
 King, for judgement is past : and for your further security, it were
 good we had some hostage : With that Haufray and Henry offered
 themselves body for body, for Garnier and his Brother : and for
 Orson Good Myllon Daugler and Duke Sampson. So a month
 was assigned for th Combat.

The time being come that they should fight, Duke Myllon
 Daugler, Sampson, Gascon, and Garvies, brought forth Orson,
 for he was well beloved, when he was armed and well mounted,
 he rode through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place
 appointed. Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry en-
 tred the field with their two Nephews, royally armed. Garnier and
 Florent the two Traitors, greatly feared Orson, but Haufray and
 Henry still comforted them, promising them aid : being thus in a
 readiness, the Bishop of Paris went unto them, and gave unto them
 all three an Oath, according to the Law of Arms, and then the
 Bishop departed away. After came the Heralds and the Serge-
 ants of the field, to clear the place. Now Haufray had provided
 3000 men hard by, and given them command, that as soon as they
 heard him blow his horn, they should set forth towards him.
 This gladdened the Traitors at the heart, but it little availed them :
 for as soon as the Trumpets gave signal, Orson couched his spear,
 and putting his spurs to his horse, ran upon them with such fury,
 and lent Garnier such a stroke, that he ran through both shield and
 armour ; Florent on the other side, gave Orson a blow, that he
 thought he had struck against a Tower : False and accursed Trai-
 tor (saith Orson) thou hast wrongfully accused me, ere this day
 pass, I shall shew thee where loyalty doth rest : and with these
 words, he with his sword smote Garnier out of his saddle, and
 withal pulled off his Helm, and had cut off his head, if his brother
 Florent had not rescued him.

Again Orson made towards Garnier, and striking off his ear,
 said, Fair Walter, I would be loath you should lose by the bargain.
 Here began a fresh Combat between these three Champions,
 Gar-

Garnier having recovered again his Helm, came upon Orson with all his force, thinking to have left some mark of that encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had soon been slain. Thus Orson had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout courage, and beside they relied much upon rescue from Haufray and Henry, but still Orson followed, & at last so wounded Garnier, that he was faine to forsake his horse. Being on the ground he smote at Orson's horse, insomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orson being light and strong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and took Garnier between his arms so strongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the earth, but as he would have wounded him in the belly, Florent came upon Orson, and gave such a stroke on his Helm, that he made him stagger: Orson being hereat, smote him so, that he overthrew his horse dead to the earth, and after took off his Helm. Florent was so ashamed hereat, that he ran up and down the field, covering his head with his shield, and Orson took pleasure in chasing of him, so Florent (said his brother) flye not, return, or we shall be vanquished, & herewithal they made a fresh encounter upon Orson, & with their two swords laid on so lustily that the strokes entered his Armour, and drew blood, Orson feeling himself wounded, smote off one of Florents arms: but yet he gave not over. Orson espying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have struck at Garnier, but suddenly withdrawing his arm, hit Florent in such wise, that he fell down dead to the earth: and after said unto Garnier: Traitor, thou shalt after except thou confesse the Treason. Not so Orson, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers death: Haufray and Henry disliked the match, and said: one of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confesse the Treason, and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (said Haufray) I will tell you what may be done: as soon as we perceiue Garnier to be overcome, before he confesse any thing we will enter the field, and make as if we came to cheer up Orson, and we will cut off our Nephews head, and so the treason shall not be known. Quoth Henry, be it so. Now are both the Champions at it in the field. Garnier (said Orson) you see you cannot escape my hands, therefore confesse the Treason, and I will save

take your life, Boy (quoth Garnier) thy fair promises are little worth, for seeing that I have lost an ear, I little respect any place of honour so rather chusing to dye valiantly, or conquer thee, I set down my rest, that here I will finish my fortunes, either to conquer or to be conquered. Agreed (quoth Orson) and sith death is so welcome to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest day of thy life: and thus he makes at Garnier and by strength of arms threw him under him, & pulled off his Helm, Haufray seeing there was no way but one, cryed out; O son slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, so we will do such justice upon him as to so foul a fact appertaineth: and Haufray said unto Garnier: Nephew confess the fact, and we will be a means unto the King for your pardon. Lords, said Garnier, I did put the knife into the Kings bed: in speaking these words, Haufray drew out his sword, running him quite through, and after said: Lords, let this Traitor be hanged on the Gallows, as he hath well deserved, but Conzen Orson, I am glad of your victory, for it probeth you innocent: and though Garnier were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my blood. Now was come the Lady Fezon, who was glad of Orsons victory: B. Pepin also came, saying, Nephew, you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle (quoth Orson) the Traitors are banquished, and Haufray made Garnier to confess the treason, and so killed him. Nephew, beware of that Haufray, for he hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The King and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and made great joy for the victory. Haufray and Henry spake well of him, but in their hearts they imagined mischief, which after came to light, and then had their desert: where we leave them, and return to Valentine, who rode from place to place to find out Clerimond.

Valentine having travelled long, at last arrived in the City of Antioch, thinking to find the Lady Clerimond. Pacolet being with him, could speak their language, and took up their lodging in a great mans house: but the Host of the house was somewhat doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken, inasmuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of Antioch, and said: Sir, there are four Christians in my house, that have entred your Land without pay-
ing

ing of Tribute. The King said, Thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto Valentine: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must make choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (qd. Valentine) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many men: she is bigger then a horse, winged like a fowl, feathered like a Giffon, the head of a Serpent, a great Ring within her mouth, a fierce look, the skin covered with red scales, and she hath the feet of a Lyon. Quoth Valentine, this is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your Mahometry and become Christians. The King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any yet returned alive that attempted it. Sir (qd. Valentine) let me have a boat or two with this Monster. Then he caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastened a great number of long spikes of steel, a foot long, as sharp as needles.

This Shield being made, Valentine put on Armour, and buckling on his Helm, then girded his sword to his side, took leave of his men, and mounted his horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their windows to behold the sight. Now they of the City were fain to provide for the Dragon, either the Carcass of a man, or of a beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City: but having eaten her prey, she would return unto her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malefactors as any way had deserved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Sea-side, for to take up Christians, if they hapned to come on shore; and they were brought to be devoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the sight of the Dragon; she seeing one come towards her, closed her wings most fiercely, casting out of her mouth smoke like fire. Then he descended from his Horse, and left his Harp Ar at his Savole Bow, and went toward the Serpent, thinking to have smitten her, but she lifted up her paw to smite Valentine, who subtilly watching his



opportunity, lifted up his shield (armed as you have heard with plates) and so the serpent braced her foot upon them, who feeling her self hurt, she cried out most horribly, drawing back, and recoiling. Valentine pursued, but when the Serpent saw him approach, she rose on her feet, and thought to have beaten down Valentine with her fore-feet under her, but fearing the shield, she ran back. The King beholding this, said: See ponder is a most valiant knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardiness. Also, the fair Queen Rozamond fell in love with Valentine, to see him to adventures.

Now grew the battel fiercer and dangerous between Valentine and the Dragon, but still she fearing the pricks of the shield, by which he held her play. In the one hand bare his shield, and the other his sword, wherewith he gave the serpent a marvellous blow under the ear, but with the blow he broke his sword. Valentine was in great danger when his sword was broken, for the beast grew so angry, that with her paw she rent his armor quite through. Valentine

Valentine still pursued her, and drew forth a knife, and struck it in her throat, but she little regarded it: Valentine seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Ar at his saddle bow, and returning unto her, subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the serpent such a blow with his Ar, that he cut off most part of her tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this she flew at Valentines head and pulling off his helm, smote him to the ground, but he quickly getting up was half amazed at his head uncovered: Pacolet perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City, and put him self in arms, got another helm, and bare it to his Master. Valentine perceiving him, said: Friend, I am well nigh spent, go thy ways, and commend me to my friends, for if thou stay here, thou must dye with me. But for all this, Pacolet came to Valentine, and delivered the helm: the Serpent seeing that, came to Pacolet and taking him by the right leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a crush with her paw, that he felt it through his Armour, and had slain him, had not Valentine with his Ar cut of his nose, and put out one of her eyes: these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her wings, she flew to the top of a high rock. Then went Valentine to his helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the beast came flying down and he was faine to cover his head with his shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the rock. Then Pacolet put on Valentines helm, and said: Sir, I am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some relief, for my heart faileth: so they took leave. As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed Valentine, and flying directly at his head, thought to have laid hold thereon, but Valentine with his Ar so right, that he cut off one of her wings, whereby she could not flye. The Dragon being down, Valentine quickly smote off the other wing, so that the battel was most violent between them, in so much as he was not able to lift up his arm any longer to wield his Ar, but leaving all, he got up into a tree to rest his wearied limbs, and the beast not able any more to fly, beheld him with a cruel countenance, casting out of her mouth, nothing but stinking vapors. Valentine being well refreshed, came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran directly at him. Valentine still put the shield before him, and with his Ar cut her left thigh,

wherewith she fell to the earth. Valentine still pursued his Brooks, and ran his Ax so far in her throat that she fell down dead. Valentine having thus overcome the dragon, the King called unto him, and said: Of all Knights thou art the most hardiest, for by thy valour is our City delivered of a fearful enemy, that hath much damaged us: With these words they entered the City, and so to the Palace, where a solemn feast was held: When the King caused Valentines wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamoured on him so hottly, that for to gain his Love, she would have wrought the death of the King her husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his wounds within the City of Antioch, he said unto the King: Sir, you remember your promise, that you and your people would receiue Baptism if I overcame the Dragon; you see he is slain by me only. True (quod the King) and look what I promised I will perform; and thereupon sent this present edict throughout the Land, that every one should forsake Mahomet, & be baptized. The Queen sent for Valentine to her Chamber, who presently went to her, and said: Lady, I am come at your command, and ready to do you service. Ah, said the Lady, thou art of great hardinels, wisdom, strength, and all the Beatitudes belonging to a famous Warriour, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy love: And that I were not a woman, or a woman not under subjection, I could love thee beyond humane reason, hadst thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady I thank you, but you have wedded a puissant King, and him only ought you to love & honour. It is true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee all my thoughts are captivated. Valentine seeing the Queen so eager, replied: Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me I should surely be put to death. Again, he is old, you young, tell your self content till I return from my intended journey, to the holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many women, that are weary of their husbands for the love of others. Even so began this Queen to practise, for one night, as the Queen was going to bed, a cup of wine was brought unto her (as the custom was) where-

in

in the end conveyed poison, and after presented it unto the King: but he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying: Lady look what drink you have brewed, either drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to say, but falling on her knees, craved pardon, and said that Valentine procured her to do it. I do believe that, qu. the King, and pardon thee: so they lay together that night; but the King requested that Valentine might be put to death. He shall as sure as I live, qu. the King. She hearing the King say so, was very sorrowful, and secretly calling one of her Maidens, sent to Valentine to tell him her will, and what the King had decreed against him: Valentine hearing of this accusation, whereof he was innocent, said: What will not a woman undertake? now for the love of the Queen must I depart like a Traitor, or else lay her shame open to the world: well I will rather depart with dishonour to myself than her. And therewithal calling up his attendants, before the morning he departed the City, and came to the Sea-side, where lay a ship full of passengers, ready to put off, in amongst the rest goes he and his company, so hoisting sails they departed. On the morrow, when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them: Lords, I am most deceived in the man whom I trusted, and he whom in heart I held dearest, hath betrayed me; Valentine I mean, who for to gain the lawless love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poison me, therefore let us proceed to judge him to some shameful death.

Amongst the rest, an aged wise Baron, said: We have no reason to proceed against an offender, without calling him to answer: Again, were he never so great an offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon Valentine was sent for: but instead of Valentine came his host, who told them Valentine was gone before the break of the day from his house, but whether he knew not. The King hearing this, suddenly sent forth men to follow and pursue him, but all in vain, for he was past their reach on the Sea.

Shortly after that the King of Antioch was converted, his wives Father Brandifer, a Turk had so great a spleen against the King, for altering his Religion, that he sent to him for his daughter Rozamond. When the King heard his unjust demand, he gain-said him:

hereupon Brandifer came upon him with an 100000 Pagans, and besieged his City: At last within the compals of four months, by treason he obtained it, took the King Prisoner, and suddenly put him to death, and Crowned himself King of Antioch. This done, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempest he was forced into the Land of Greece, into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this City by chance was the Emperoz of Greece newly arrived then, and he and the Green Knight, with some other company rid forth to sport themselves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandiffers Soldiers, and having gotten them basted towards the gates of the City, thinking to have seized the whole City, but they found it manfully defended.

The men of Cretophe were very sorrowful for the loss of the Emperoz and the Green Knight. At last they determined to send Letters unto Belysan of what had hapned, and to demand aid against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters, was wondrous sad, and sending for their Captains and men of War, made preparation for a speedy revenge. Also she sent for her Son Orson, and craved aid of her brother King Pepin. Being thus in readines, they were sent to the succour of the Emperoz: But Brandifer had scouts abroad to give him notice of all that hapned, and fearing the forces of the Greeks, and their prisoners loss, they stole to the Sea-side, so taking ship, they in short time arrived at Lize, in which place they took a Castle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, Rozamond and Galazy, who for her beauty had been demanded of fourteen Kings. Brandifer had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he caused her to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land: for it had a Bridge made by such cunning Art, that but one could pass at a time: at the end of this Bridge two fierce Lyons stood to keep the entry into this Castle: The Lady Galazy was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperoz and the Green Knight, with other Christians, which had been there a long time, were put. We here leave you them, and we shall shew you somewhat of the fair Lady Clerimond, which still remained in Inde.



CHAP. XLVI.

How Clerimond after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of Inde: and of Lucar that would revenge the death of his Father King Trompart, upon the King of Inde: and how King Lucar in the City of Esclardy, wedde dell Ozamond the fair Daughter of Brandiffer: and how Valentine departed from Esclardy, to breath out vengeance, and of the answer he brought from the Indian King: and how Rozamond found a way to be taken, and led unto the Indian King: and how King Lucar caused Brandiffer to stay with him, and sent Valentine into Angory against King Pepin: and how King Pepin took the City of Angory.

You have heard already of the death of King Trompart, who Role away the Lady Clerimond upon Paolets horse: also how she got pardon for one whole year before she would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no succour for her relief, which she had so long expected: Wherefore (poor Lady) now is she put to her shifts, and to save her Maiden-head, she feigned her self very sick. This news came to the Kings ear, that the fair Clerimond was extrem sick, at which he grew very sad, and came to visit her, at last he would have put his hand upon her head, to have held it, but she refusing, took his arm, and lift up her head herself, making signs that she would bite him, at which action he was wondred, and grew much astonished thereat.

After this she rowled her eyes up and down, and made grievous faces, in such wise, that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing lest she should prove mad. In this manner she abode a long time, and she did all the matter so well, that within fifteen days she seemed more like a beast then a woman: she made all her Attendants forsake her, for if she caught them, she would leave some mark behind her, so they left her alone, giving her meat at the window, for none would come near her. One while she put her smock upermost, anon she bedaubed her face with soot, and in this estate the King came and beheld her, lamenting her distemper, and

said

said unto her : Lady, now is the time come that I should have had you to wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well made shew as if she would hear him, but then she fell into a stranger fit of madness; one while she would run against the chimney, another while fall into a great laughter, then sit down and make faces, and all to preserve her chastity. Many ways was tried for her recovery, yet none prevailed : so leave we her in her chamber, and return to Valentine, who with an ardent desire is robed abroad, accompanied with Pacolet, to find out the Lady Clerimond. Long have they travelled to find out the Lady Clerimond, and now were they arrived in Escardy, which was the Kingdom of Trompart, who carried away the Lady on Pacolet's horse. Being in the City, they asked for K. Trompart, so they told him he was slain by the King of Inde, and that now at this present, Lucar his Son would revenge his death upon the King of Inde, and to that end he had newly mustred up his powers, and waged many royal Kings to undertake this war. Then spake Pacolet, who well understood the language, saying; Of what account is this K. Lucar ? for the host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the daughter of Brandisser, that was late wife to the King of Antioch, who was slain by Brandisser, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this tale Valentine was much abashed, and wondered at this sudden alteration: but at last he said; Know ye not what is become of the Lady that King Trompart did bring with him ? Of her we hear no tydings (quoth the Host :) tell me then where is K. Lucar at this present, I would fain serve under him for wages, for my money is fallen short, and I have a great desire to follow the wars. Harry said the Host, King Lucar is in Escardy, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge Host, and attendeth Brandisser to receive his daughter in Wedlock. Valentine knowing all this, he hoped to hear of Clerimond; and so he departed, and came to Escardy, to serve King Lucar.

Lucar being in the City of Escardy, thither came Brandisser with his daughter, at sight of whom K. Lucar was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto King Lucar.

Valen =

Valentine was abroad, and entring a wood, he heard the crying voice of a woman, whom a Sarazen would have ravished: Valentine still heard the cry, and said unto Pacolet: Hide faster, for this cry is more and more in my ear, and we shall do a charitable deed, in relieving the oppressed. Sir, said Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of necessity: so he robe up and down the wood, till at last he lighted on the Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady under him. When Valentine said: My friend, for sake your Lady, or else betake you to your arms, and combat with me, for you may well perceiue she loveth you not. By Mahomet, quoth the Pagan, I accept of this thy challenge, and will make thee know that in an evil hour camest thou hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his horse, and then took his shield and spear, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that Valentine ran his spear quite through the body of the Pagan, insomuch as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the maiden, saying; Damoisel, now is your enemy laid in the dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this man brought you into this wood: Sir, I will tell nothing save the truth: So it was, that yesternight late he came into my fathers house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterward he thought he should surely have got his will on me, in this manner as you see, from which by your manhood I am freed, and mine honour saved, do with me what pleaseth you, for your body hath ransomed mine, and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to your pleasure.

Damoisel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your house, and keep well your chastity. So Valentine left the Maiden, and took his way towards Escalady. This slain Pagan had certain Attendants which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying, our Master, and your Marshal lies slain in the wood. The King was hereat right heaby, & presently sent out a search, to see if they could find the spurtherer. At last Valentine and his company were taken,

him, bound, and beaten by the Kings Commandment. Now in this Castle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very joyful for him, and anon she went unto the King and said: Alas Sir, do this Knight no harm, for I know he is the valiantest Knight breathing, he is called Valentine of France, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of Antioch; make much of him, and retain him into your service, for his fellows lives not in the world. Lady (said the King) divers times have I heard much talk of his prowess, and I have much desired to have a sight of him. Then he called Valentine unto him, and said: Knight, fear not death, but know that above all men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours I receive into my pay: marry, one thing yet remaineth, which you must do for me, which is, that you go into Inde, and beseech the King thereof in my name, telling him that I am ready prepared to avenge the death of my father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come presently before me with a Coyb about his neck, ready to receive such sentence, as by me and my Barons shall be imposed upon him: if he deny it, tell him I will shortly visit him and his Land with war, and not leave one Town or Village unransacked, nor spare the life of an. He (said Valentine) all this shall I gladly do, although I know it to be a dangerous adventure.

The Queen Rozamond seeing Valentine ready to depart, entred into the chamber, and by one of her Damosels sent for him: when he came to her, he saluted her with great reverence, and she said to him: Knight you are welcome, for I had a great desire to see you. And had I Lady (quoth Valentine) as great a desire to see you for since I saw you, I understand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly married again. Lady, you know that for the love of you, within Antioch I sustained much danger of life: 'Tis true (said the Lady) and I acknowledge my self guilty, and it grew only out of love to you. But now hath my father bestowed me to Sir Lucan, who is rich above measure, yet can I not fancy him, he is a perfidious Traitor, and once you entred this Palace, he grows so jealous of you, that he sends you into Inde, trusting you shall never return: for never yet any came back again alive: but I will circumvent him, and set you free from danger: Wherefore know

know this, that not long ago the King of Inde requested me for his wife, and the truth is, I loved him better then this traitor; but my father crossed me in it: now this King of Inde in token of love, sent me a ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not shewed to any, save your self, but seeing I perceive the malice of Lucar towards you I will give you that wh. sh. shall defend you from danger, and make you return a victorious knight; and though I am assured you have no need of my love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled. Therefore when you come before the K. of Inde, this shall you do.

After reverence made, and salutations from B. Luca, next greet him from me, as my Love, and secret friend, and tell him, that though my father hath given me unto King Lucar, yet his Love cannot once slip out of my breast, but will both assured, and full hope one day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures: tell him also, that when King Lucar bringeth his Host, I will come with him, and then if there any valour in him, he may carry me away whither he will. Now to the end he shall not find your words to be in vain, hear him this King. Lady (sd. Valentine) for your care, love, and good will towards me I humbly thank you, and have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your message so effectually to the King of Inde, that you shall shortly receive answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to B. Luca, who allowed him ten Mariners to conduct him over an arm of the Sea, that lieth between Escardy and Inde, so that having a prosperous wind, the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Palace of the K. of Inde. When Valentine being arrived, he made loose his horse out of the ship, and barked him, and said unto the Mariners: Abide here till my return, for it shall not be long ere I be dispatched. One of the Mariners said unto the rest: If thou return, the Devil must haue thee, for of fifty messengers, not one returned again. Valentine euer heard this muttering speech, but made no answer, so he took his way to the City: And when he was near the Palace, he alighted on his horse, and went to the King, who was in his Hall richly adorned, surrounded with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a moulted brow, and thought he was a messenger of B. Luca, and therefore said

aloud unto him: Art thou not a servant of King Lucars? Sir (said Valentine) I am, and bring you such things as will fret your heart; but on the other side, I bring such gladness news, that your very heart will leap to hear it, from the fair Rozamond. Well, know this, that in the sight of M. Lucar thou shouldst have suffered death, but for the love and reverence I owe unto that Lady, thou shalt receive no injury, if so it be, that thou canst shew me some token from her. Yes, said Valentine, that I shall shew you, and deliver my message with such applause, that I will not swerve from the truth thereof. What I belong to M. Lucar, you know, who by me sendeth these words, that for the death of his father, you must come and yield to his mercy, with a rope about your neck, as a man guilty of so foul a deed, to receive sentence of death, according to your desert. If you refuse it (as a Wellenger) I breathe defiance against you, and tell you that he will shortly come and lay waste your Land, and ravish your Dominions.

Wellenger, I understand thee, and set light by these his bold threats: and for answer to this matter, thou shalt have Letters, wherein shall be explained how little we regard his menaces, and also how ready I am to receive his forces, that shall come to whip my Land: there leave thou these proud brags, and return to that thou hast to say, concerning the fair Lady Rozamond, for I most of all desire to hear from her. Sir (said Valentine) on her behalf I salute you as her Love, and she sendeth you word, that she is against her will married to King Lucar, whom she never loved. Again the poor Lady is so burdened with love towards you, that if she might have her will, you should soon perceive, that none should enjoy her, but you, if you be so content.

Now to come yet somewhat nearer, she told me, that she will come hither in the company of the King her husband, when he taketh up arms to invade you, and then may you find other means to accomplish your desire, even as you would. By Mahomet, says the Indian King, this pleases me exceedingly. Sir, (said Valentine) whether these come from a true heart or no, I cannot say, but for token that all is true that I have said, I refer here the ring which you gave unto her, and though women prove variable, yet methinks she speaks to you from her inward breast. Friend (quoth he) this

is the same ring indeed, and my heart is overcome with joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repose, while in the mean time I get the Letters ready: thou shalt take with thee to answer this defiance.

Valentine went in as the King commanded, and was highly feared, and he still demanded after Clerimond, but could not hear of her. By this time came the King, and delivered unto him the Letters, and Valentine taking his leave of him, knew not that his love was in the Court, who abode many evil days for the love of him, and still desired to hear some news of him. In the end he shall find her, but he will suffer many tribulations and hard afflictions, as you may afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great haste to be freed out of Inde, and taking horse, he came to Haben, where the Barriners staid, at his coming the Barriners were amazed, and thought that he had not done his Message: Walkers (quoth Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my message, and I am safely returned. When the Barriners said, we much marvel thereat.

At these words he took Ship, and on the morrow they were in Escelardy. Valentine made no stay, but as soon as he was descended his horse, he went to the Palace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King Brandier, and fourteen other Kings that were come to the succour of King Lucar, against the Indian King. At the return of Valentine they wondered, for the King sent him of purpose never to return; wherefore he made Valentine come before them all, to tell what tidings of his message. Valentine began thus to say: He regards not all your threats & straw. He is fierce and proud and says, if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, then you have to come; and that you may know I neither nothing save the truth, here is a Letter sealed with his own hand, in which you shall understand his mind more at large. This Letter being broken open, they found Valentines words to be true. King Brandier understanding his answer, swore by all the Gods, that he would never return home again, but with victory, or loss of life.

The next morrow they betook them to the sea, with an host of 200000 Parazens. So the King carried Rozamond along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their

Tents in a pleasant field before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their order, so by the other side he might spy their rich pavillions gallantly furnished with arms and Treasures: then the King called unto him certain Beralds of Arms, to know by those Arms, whose Tents they were. The first (quoth he) is Brandisser, the second is Lucar, and the third is Rozamond with her Ladies. When the King understood that Rozamond was there, his heart leapt for joy and said: It is no time to sleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, must venture life and goods, or else he is not worthy of her, that will take no pains. Whereupon resolving, he presentl; put his men in battel array and suddenly issued out of the City upon his enemies, so that they were not in a readinesse, for they little thought the Indian had been so fierce, but love made him do it.

When the King saw Brandisser ordering his men in Battel array, he left his companies with much diligence he rode towards the Pavilion of the Ladies: Solo when Rozamond beheld it was he, she gave all the rest of her company the slip, and ran violently into his arms, who joyfully received her. The Indian perceiving her good will, got her up behind him, and putting spurs to his horse, he said, My love is fixed only on you, and for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated man so much as I did King Lucar, but now I pray thee, let me bid him farewell, and I will keep my self only to thee so long as I live: Lady (quoth the Indian) doubt not, for I will not fail you, and here I bid, e're three days passe, you shall be Queen of India, and Mistress of all my Lands. These words passed as he was riding away with the Lady Rozamond. At last the guard of the Wardens came out of the Pavilion, and ran to the King, saying: My Lord, there is evil tidings, for this day you have lost your fair Lady Rozamond, for the King of Inde, your utter enemy hath stolen her hence, and is ridden away with her, wherefore quickly lend your men of War, and follow him, that they may save the honour of your Queen. Hold your peace (said Lucar) and talk no more, for he that hath an evil wife, it is well if he can be so rid of her, although he had a heavy heart. After this he went to Brandisser, and said: Sir, I have small joy of your daughter, who hath

hath sett me, to run away with a stranger, and one that is mine enemy, leaving me in reproach and shame. Fair Son (said Brandish) be not discontent at me, for to day I will be revenged on him that carried her. So putting spurs to his horse, rid after him, gathered a great company of men. Amongst the rest, Valentine was one, willing to show his nobility, said unto Pacolet, now show me by thy Art somewhat. Then Pacolet raised such a Charm, which so affronted the Indians eye-sight, that it seemed to him there was nothing before his horse, but woods, bushes, and great rivers. At this he was so amazed, that he made the Lady alight, when the Queen was on the ground. He thought she should have had means to save her self with the King, but Valentine was so near her, that he said unto her: Lady abide, for you must go with me, for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah Valentine, I owe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another, but seeing I am crossed thus, I yield myself as your Vassal, so you will make my peace with Lucar.

Lady (said Valentine) I will do my endeavour: so he led her to King Lucar, and said unto him: Sir, here is the Lady Rozamond your Wife, whom the Indian Wratto, had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful: Sir, (quoth the Lady) he telleth you true, for when as the battel was begun, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons, that had come to succour me, & without any farther enquiry mounted on his horse, being on horse-back, I perceived that then I was betrayed, so I struggled and pulled him by the hair, and scratched him by the face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Art, escaped. Lady (said Lucar) you have well done, and at this present we have no leisure to enquire further hereof, so he left the Lady, & returned to the Battel. The King of Inde returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant Leaders, but none so fretted the Indian at the heart, as did the loss of Rozamond. Alas Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extremity, but I was sorely enchanted, and on the sudden, methought I saw woods, fields, and rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain and open to my behoof. Valentine had great praise for getting again

the Lady, and she shewed him a fair countenance, so that he had succoured her, but it was all feigned, for she hated him to death, and putting up this mischance, she watched her time, and in the end accomplished his desire and brought her will to execution.

It is a common saying, women seldom want deceit, as here it appeareth in Rozamond, for some foule dayes after, she rove forth of her Tent, pretending to take the air, but took her way toward the King of Iude, & had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his prisoner, and so carry her away. The King did according to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her horse by the head, and carried her into the City.

Hereupon began a cry throughout the host of King Lucar, that Rozamond was surprized, and she was past recovery. This madd-ed Lucar at the heart, and gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his hands, should be made a great Seneschal: Sir (said Picolet) if you please to achieve dignity, I will so work, that we will fetch her back? No, said Valentine, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her Husband, but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her, he lay with her, and begat a Son called Rabelre, who after ward had the possession of Jerusalem. Lucar was right sorrowful for the loss of his wife, but Brandisser his father recomforted him, saying: Son, take courage, and let us now be rebenged before we depart: but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a Messenger to him, who brought him contrary tidings: which was, that King Pepin of France, and the Emperoz of Greece was entred his Land burning and spoiling many places, and were now upon the siege of Argory, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-bed: therefore you must presently take course to restrain the fury of the enemy, or else endure such wack as were lamentable to behold.

Brandisser hereat amazed, went unto his son Lucar, and said, Son, here so evil tidings befallen, the French are entred my Land, wasting and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own: but let me tell you what you shall do: send some knight unto the Indian, to demand your wife, upon this condition, that you will first forget the death of your father, and that you will

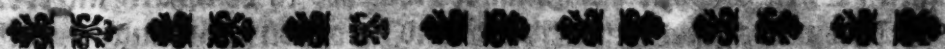
will raise your Siege and be gone. Whereto he sent Valentine unto the K. of Inde, to declare this message. He being come before him, said: Great King, I am come from K. Lucar, who says, that if you will restore his wife back again, he will forget his fathers death, and will raise up his Siege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replied: If he will have a wife, he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her: Valentine having thus received this answer, he departed, and came to King Lucar telling him all that the Indian had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means caused Brandifer to stay with him, sent Valentine and Murgalant to raise the Siege which King Pepin had laid against Angory. And as they were under sail, Valentine espying a glittering Tower, asked what it might be. Then the Mariners described the manner and fashion of it to him. When they were come within the sight of K. Pepin's Tents, and Murgalant having viewed the Christians forces, found the number to be great: then said Valentine, Let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our hands. Pacolet standing by, said: Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their Language. Quoth Murgalant: Go thy way: So Pacolet departed, but he said to himself by to morrow night you will sing another song. Pacolet being come to the very gates of the City of Angory, the warders thought him to be some Spy, wherefore they demanded of him, saying: Whither goes this fellow? he looks as if he were some spy: 'Tis true (quoth Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt, therefore bring me into the house of King Pepin, that I speak with my Lord Orson, for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him withal. So they brought him into the presence of Orson, who espying him, was right joyous, and said: How fares my Brother Valentine? When Pacolet told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they saw one another, and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could bear no tidings of Cleimond, and told him that they were now come to beat Armans against them, accompanied with 100000 Pagans, under the conduct of Valentine and Murgalant, and to chase you out of these confines,

by the command of M. Lucar, and M. Brandiffer, but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans short home. Quoth Orson, do as thou hast said, and win immortal praise for thy Posterity. Sir, said Pacolet, I am bound in all duty to your Brother Valentine; but the service that I shall now undertake, will highly please you. First, stand you still upon your guard, and in the night put all your men in readiness, and for that Valentine shall not be suspected to be in the plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong sleep on the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them and slay every man. It is good, said Orson, so Orson led him to King Pepin to make him acquainted with the enterprise, and Pacolet was royally entertained for that time. Now Pacolet, to the end there should grow no mistrust, gave certain signs to Murgalant. Being in the City he found out the Admiral Burnas, and saluted him with great reverence, and delivered unto him the Message which he had brought from Murgalant, which was, that of Brandiffers part were now arrived 100000, and Murgalant sends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your men in a readiness, to assail the Christians on the one side of the City, and Murgalant will assail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a man of them escape. The Admiral was glad to hear these tydings, but he knew not how this should come to pass. Pacolet took his leave of him, and returned back again unto Murgalant with salutations from the Admiral: so Murgalant gave him great thanks for his message, and Pacolet departed secretly to speak with Valentine. When he was come, he said thus unto him, Your Brother Orson, and your Uncle King Pepin greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole manner of your coming, because I would have them well, and ready prepared. But Pacolet would not let him know the plot he had in hand, for he durst not reveal any Treason unto Valentine. The night is come, wherein this bloody stratagem is to be acted, so Valentine commanded the Watch to be strongly set, and would be in the watch himself, but Pacolet found a way to prevent him, and caused him to abide in the Tent. In the dead time of the night Pacolet went amongst the Pagans, and cast such a charm, that they fell asleep. This opportunity was not let slip by M. Pepin, for he with his Ar-

my entred the Hoast with 60000 fighting men, and set fire amongst the Tents and Pavillions, and killed all that resisted: At last they came to the Tent of Murgalant, who lay asleep in his bed, and he being suddenly affrighted shipped out, and one receiv'd his body on a Dart, and so he fell down dead.

The assault being given on the Sarazens, Pacolet said unto Valentine, seek to save your self, for the Christians have killed the Watch, and entred the Hoast. Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast made me break my promise with Brandisser, for which I shall surely dye. Fear not qu. Pacolet, for he shall do no harm. The morrow after, Bruhans issued out of Angory, & set upon Pepins Hoast, who knew not what had hapned. The battel grew both fierce and long: At last the Admiral couched his Spear, and running against a Mt. of Bay, struck him stark dead, and after that, with his Sword he slew Gyrald of Peris: then came he against Robert of Normandy, & lopt off his Leg. At last K. Pepin met with him, and couching his Spear, he ran him quite through: The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City, the Christians followed them, but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were fain to forsake the walls: but by some other stratagems they won the City, putting al the Sarazens to the sword, within this City, was great Riches, which was divided among the Souldiers.



C H A P. XLVII.

How Valentine returned back to India after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of K. Murgalant, and how he heard tidings of his Father, and how Pacolet freed the Indian K. and left Brandisser in Prison. And how K. Lucar caused all that hundred that warred the Indian, to be drawn to death at horses tails, and how Valentine and Pacolet departed secretly out of his Hoast, & went to Angory, and of the vision of K. Pepin, and how he went into the holy Land with the twelve Peers of France. And what happened. And how Haufray and Henry betrayed their Father K. Pepin, and the twelve Peers of France. And how Caliph of Bendas made truce between the Indian, Lucar and Brandisser.

And how Haufray, to further his Treason, came before Lucar and Brandiffer, and how he was intrapped in his own net.

The City being taken by the Christians, Valentine finding the body of Murgalant in the field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After certain days sail, they arrived where Lucar and Brandiffer were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two Kings, as they sat playing at Chess. As soon as King Lucar saw Valentine, he said: Knight, welcome home; how soreth and speedeth our forces, have you put all the Christians to the worst, & taken Pepin and his nephew Orson? Alas, said Valentine, it is fallen out contrary, for we have lost the field, and all our men are slain. For B. Farin that had the whole charge of the watch, let his men sleep, and so the Christians came and made habock of our Army. As soon as I got any tidings hereof, I awaked my men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this battel was slain your Uncle Murgalant, whose body I have here brought. This spectacle fretted Brandiffer at the heart, that in madness he threw away the Chess-board: and said, surely Valentine thou wert the cause of this. No, Valentine, I return him the lye that says so, and I will maintain my innocency with my sword. Pay (said King Lucar) if he had plotted any treason he would never have come again: When Brandiffer commanded the body to be royally interred.

This news gladdened the Indian, and hereupon gathering up all his forces, he issued forth of the City. The battel being begun, Valentine threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last, meeting the Indian King, he smote him off his horse. Pacolet seeing him down, he led him unto Valentine, and unto the Tent of King Brandiffer: When tidings came that the Indian King was taken, he called unto his men, saying: Follow hard and the day is our own, so they entered the Battel, and drave the Indians to a retreat. When Brandiffer saw they withdrew themselves, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both sides a great slaughter. The Battel lasted so long that it was night, and Brandiffer and Lucar betook them to their Tents and bad that the Indian King should be brought before them. When King Lucar saw him, he said unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand.

The Indian made shift to understand him, but said never a word.

King Lucar had no sooner ended his rough speech to the Indian King, but there arrived a Messenger : who said unto Brandisser : A bying you sad tidings, O King ! for Pepin King of France hath taken your City of Angory, & put unto the sword, Man, Woman, and Child. These are ill tidings indeed (quoth Brandisser) but seeing we have the King of Inde in subjection, I hope shortly to free mine own Country. Then he said unto King Lucar, Son, we have the King of Inde in hold, let us make short work with him, & to morrow morning let him be hanged up : which being done, we will speed unto Angory against the French, and take vengeance for these wrongs done unto me. Also, I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperour of Greece, and the Green Knight, Prisoners, who at my coming shall suffer death. Valentine, being present, was glad to hear of his Father, so by a sign he acquainted Pacolet, that he should shortly stand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed he would find some means to release them out of Prison. Also, the Indian King looked wisely on Valentine, and said thus to himself : Cursed be that hour that thou escapedst my hands, for had I put thee unto death, these dangers had never befallen me : Then King Lucar called a strong Guard of Armed Sarazens, and said unto them, keep well this Traitor, and on the Morrow he shall be hanged. So they took him, and brought him into one of the Pavilions, and bound him about the middle to a post & so left him falling to play again. Now Valentine called Pacolet unto him, saying : I am half in doubt whether Brandisser have my Father in hold, for if I were assured thereof, I would not have endangered my body as I have done in his service : but now is the time to be revenged. Sir, (quoth Pacolet) you have small reason to bear him good will, therefore, if so you please, I will find a way to free the Indian King, and to deliver Brandisser into his hands, so may your Uncle Pepin hold Angory still. This quoth Valentine) would be worthy of thanks, wherefore procure the plot, that so I may help mine Uncle, and deliver my Father. Pacolet having an eye to what he would do, after supper came among those hundred, that had the charge of the Indian King. After they had made fire without the pavilion, Pacolet call them all into a dead sleep. Having so

done, he went to the Indian King and said: Noble King be glad in me, for I am Mahomet, and am come to set thee free. Then go thou to thy Wallace, and bear along with thee Brandiffer, who shall not know whither he goeth. Alas (said the Indian to Pacolet) taking him for Mahomet) it should seem I have deserved well at thy hands, when thou tookest so much pains to come hither and deliver me from death & mine enemies. King (said Pacolet) trust in me, believe the counsel of thy Wife. Herewith Pacolet led him towards Brandiffer, causing all the watch to fall into a dead sleep, and so enchanted him, that he aroise made him ready, & went along with the Indian King into his Wallace.

The Indian being thus set free, gave thanks to Mahomet for his delivery, then Pacolet brought him a horse, made him mount him, and set Brandiffer behind him, sent him packing for India, and so took his leave. At last the Indian came to the Gates of his own City, and calling the Porters, was instantly let in: when Rozamond beheld him, she said: Sir, you are right welcome home, but tell me, how you come by my Father, that you have brought him with you, is there a peace concluded? No (qd. the King) Masloner delivered him into my hands, and freed me from death. So by this time ended the vigour of the charm, and Brandiffer awaking, began to say: How came I hither, some Devil hath enchanted me: nay, said the King, Mahomet hath brought us hither, that you may be at peace with me. I had rather dye; therefore set me free, that I may go to my Host again: Not so, for since you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the Sarazens that guarded the Indian, lay still asleep; At the break of day, Lucar came to the Pavillion where the Indian lay, but when the Pagans saw him, they cry for mercy, for they had lost their Prisoner. Varlees, quoth Lucar, your lives shall pay for it, so he caused them to be drawn along the streets at Horses tails, & after hanged, whereat Pacolet laughed, but Valentine said, friend, I shall never be at ease till I have found out my father, whom Brandiffer keepeth in Prison. Here Valentine and Pacolet leave the Pagans, and after travelled to hear tidings of the Lady Cleirmond.

You have heard before, how King Pepin took Angory, so now will I make plain to you the manner of a treason toward him by
Haufray

Haufray and Henry : it happened as the King was in his bed in Angory, he had a Dream to this effect : He thought that he beheld a pale, pale, shewing unto him diuers Relicks, besides a famous Sepulchre, and three times this apparition troubled him : The morning being now come, he called before him all his barons and declared unto them the manner of this Dream, and said unto them: Lords I know not what may befall, but I think it some delusion, or else it may be that I should go visit the holy places without the City of Jerusalem. Then spake Orson, I will go with you, if so you please. & I also, go. Myllon Daugler: after the 12 Peers offered themselves unto him, to assist him in his Pilgrimage. The King hearing them so forward, gave them thanks, & calling before him Haufray & Henry, he said unto them: Haufray, you know you are my natural son, but yet in such time was you gotten, when I had not one foot of Land in France, therefore it is my will that you enjoy this Land of Angory, therefore keep it valiantly.

Then Haufray, said to Henry : Brother, you understand the King our Father well, do you not : He will prefer us to strange Lands as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: now as for his young Son Charles, he prohibeth to leave him King of France, and we must be content with a forraign part: heresore he ruled by me, and Pepin shall never return into France to establish his Heir. We will work a plot to deliver him into the hands of the Pagans, and then shall we be King of France, & Emperour of Rome, all which I think after. Brother, quoth Henry, your words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished : Haufray said, I shall tell thee how : Go unto King Brandisser, and tell him that I must have his daughter Galazy, and being with him, tell him that King Pepin and the twelve Peers of France, do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, and they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but a few in train. Brother, this will do well, wherefore make haste to India, there shall you find Lucar and Brandisser, when you have found them, acquaint them with the plot, and I will go along with you. Do so, quoth Haufray, for I shall never be at quiet, till this business be finished. Thus had they plotted Treason against their Father, who had now entred the seas, thinking to accomplish their pilgrimage. Henry going along with

with them: and Haufray likewise hath taken his way towards India: so leave we them and return to other matters.

The Caliph of Bander, being come into the host of Brandiffier and Lucar, treated a truce for a month between them and the King of India: so appointing a day to meet thereupon, the Caliph began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you, that the Christians have won the Realm of Angory, wherefore I wonder that you continue here, maintaining a needless War, and suffer the enemy to grow upon you, in a place of such import: therefore list a while to what I shall declare: True it is, that the King of India slew your father Trompart, for that he killed his Uncle: this was one for another. Therefore let the Indian deliver Brandiffier, and as for Rozamond; let her be brought, and set between the two Kings, Lucar and the Indian, & if she will stay with the Indian let her, if she will go with Lucar, let him receive her. This his counsel was generally accepted, & Rozamond was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph pronounced the matter for which she was called. Rozamond having heard what was said: she resolved to keep her to the Indian & Lucar departed away very sorrowful.

The same day that the Caliph made this conclusion, Haufray came unto the Host of Lucar and Brandiffier, and making haste to their Tabernacles, he saluted them, unto whom Brandiffier said: What wind hath driven you hither? Sir, said Haufray that I have to deliver crabeth secretie and attention. So they drew from their attendants, and then Haufray said: Lords, you all know that I am Son to Papin King of France & I also understand, that you (speaking to Brandiffier) have a beautiful daughter: now if it please you to give me your Daughter in Marriage, I will deliver into your hands my Father, and all the Peers of France, that have so much damaged you: for know that in the habit of Pilgrims, they have taken their journey to visit the holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, slenderly accompanied. Quoth Brandiffier, for these reasons I will give thee my daughter Galazy, but it must be upon condition, that you renounce your Faith: yea (quoth Haufray) that shall I do. When Brandiffier saw the Treachery of Haufray, first that he would betray his father, next, forsake his Religion, he withdrew himself to advise with Lucar and the Caliph, saying to them: You see the treasons

treasons of this man, that demandeth my daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the death of his Father, and mine of the whole State of France: No, I will not make my peace with such an homicide. I had rather see my daughters death, then give her to so vile a Traitor. After these words, he called to Haufray, and said: Sir, I am glad of your coming, & this shall be your task, you shall go to my Daughter, and bear her this Letter from me, there pass away your time, till we have further leisure to resolve on your business. Sir, said Haufray, I am ready to accomplish your demand: so he delivered him the Letter, and 100 men to conduct him on his way: after they were at Sea, within few days, they came within the sight of the strong Castle where Galazy was: when they were come unto the gate of the Castle, the Porter called unto them, saying: My Lords, you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said Haufray, tell the Lady that we shall satisfy her, the Porter went unto the Lady, and said: Lady, without the gate stand a company of men, that faine would enter, and as I think, they are come from your father. The Lady had her Gentleman-usher, go know what they would, and of whence they were, who did as she commanded: as soon as she understood he came from her father King Brandiffier, she bound up the Lyons, and opened the Gate, so Haufray entered, and thought all this had been for his good, but it fell out contrary, for he by treason was intrapped. Being entered the Castle, he was brought before the Lady Galazy, whose beauty even amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one word. After some time of pause, he saluted the Lady, and said unto her: Fair Soberaign, know, that for the great renown that I have heard of your most excellent beauty, I have left my country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him happy, and so that you shall find me speak nothing but truth, loe, here is a Letter sent by me from your father.

The Lady taking the Letter, read it, when she had read it, she beheld Haufray, saying: Wastal, I have read thy Letter, and I find thee a Christian, and that thou hast sold the Life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of France, all this my father certifieth by his Letter unto me, and commandeth me, that I determine what shall be done unto thee. Now for that I understand thee to be a most per-
Adour

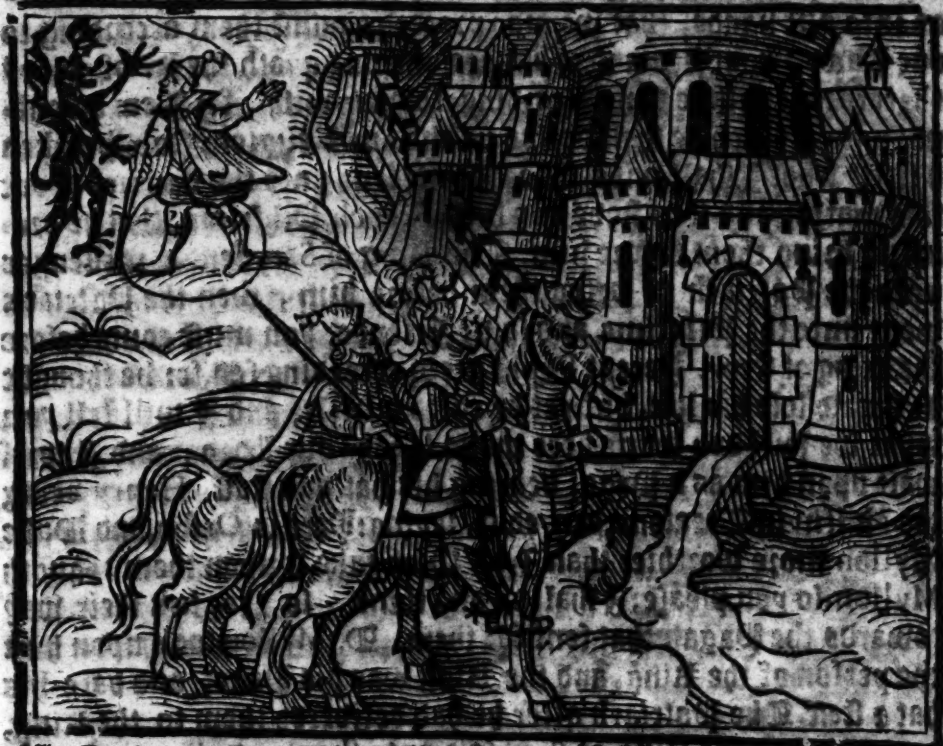
his own Treason, I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take pity, nor mercy upon such a wretch as thou art: So he called unto his Officers, and committed him to prison in a dark Dungeon. Haufray seeing what had hapned said: It is a bitter marriage to me: instead of having my person, you shall be Master of my Prison, and so he was convey'd away forth of her presence. Now in the same Dungeon, lay the Emperour of Greece, and the Green Knight: and when they heard they should have another fellow Prisoner, the Emperour, so soon as he came in, demanded of him from whence he was: Haufray said: it is no matter of whence, but I am that unhappy Haufray, Bastard Son of R. Pepin: why, quoth the Emperour, I am the Emperour of Greece: can you tell me how it fareth with my Brother R. Pepin, & my two Sons, with the rest of the Peers of France: Sir, said Haufray, they are in this Countrey of Angory, and have won the same in battel. So leave we them in Prison, & return to Valentine and Pacolet.



C H A P. XLVIII.

How Valentine and Pacolet came before the Castle, & how Pacolet raised up the Devil, to ask his Counsel about the taking of the Castle. And how Brandiff brought the twelve Peers of France into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them. And how he besieged the City of Angory. And how Brandiff having knowledge that Lucar was captive in Angory, made means to Valentine to deliver him upon sufficient ransom.

After many days sail, these two arriv'd at the Castle, & being to it strangely, thinking it impregnable: at last, Pacolet said: Sir, anon I will tell you more, so he went aside & cast a figure, incontinently there appeared unto him a devil, who said unto him: Leave off your enterprise, for the Castle is not to be taken but by treason, so vanished: suddenly after his departure, there arose a great Tumult about the Castle, inasmuch as Valentine lost the sight of Pacolet, & was given into an amusement. This mist being dispersed, Pacolet came to Valentine, & said, let us depart, for there is no way to conquer this castle but by treason, so they took the Castle, & went towards Angory, being there, they demanded ransoms of



of K. Pepin, but it was answered, he was gone to Jerusalem on pilgrimage, so Valentine resolved to stay there till his Noble returned; but all in vain, for by the treason of Haufrey, King Pepin was surprized by King Brandier, as you shall hear.

King Pepin being come to Jerusalem, by the direction of certain guides, they were conducted to the holy places. During the time of their abode here in Jerusalem, came Brandier, the Indian King, and K. Achanhabill, and the King of Haufrey, as before you have heard accompanied with a great host of men, and marched so far, that they came unto the King of Araby: being come unto him, he did not much marvel at their coming, and after salutations, demanded the cause. Then spake Brandier: Sir, know this, that our Christian friends are informed, that lately there is come into this holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is Pepin K. of France, the rest are the twelve Peers; if it be so, we crave your aid and assistance, for they are unto us mortal enemies, and have taken from us our City of Angory, making great spoils within

my Territories; wherefore we desire you that they may be delivered into our hands, that we may proceed against them according to our Laws: your demand is but reasonable (quoth the K. of Sury) therefore let all be done according to your wish, for I am an enemy unto all such as shall deride us and our Religion: Now hearken a little what I shall undertake, I will send unto the Patriark about this matter, and if he have any such French Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before him. The King of Sury sent a messenger unto the Patriark to bring them before him, then the Patriark went unto the Pilgrims and said: Friends, you must come before the King of Sury. Whereat Pepin grew exceeding sad, for he thought he should lose his life, but yet he ruled a little, and I will tell you what we will do: let us here make Henry our Lord, and I will wait upon him as a Page, bearing his hat and staff. Henry being too shy to be in Treason, denied it, saying: Here is Orson, and Duke Myllon more worthy than I, let them take it upon them: quoth Myllon, so you please, I shall do any thing; so they took their way towards the Pagan that sent for them. D. Myllon took upon him the person of the King, and the King was his Page, and bare his hat & staff. The Patriark after he had delivered them to the King, departed, and the King of Sury said unto them: It is told me you are all French men, come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of France. Sir, said one of the company, the K. of France is not here: Now, not here (quoth Sury) if he do not show himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous death. Then spake Henry the Traitor, and said: It is not I. At these words D. Myllon doubted treason, and said: Sir, I am the King of France, but withal suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note, we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws, and Customs, of your Country, paying a certain tribute. Now this tribute is by us daily paid and observed, therefore you offer us much wrong, to detain us contrary to your Customs.

Say what you will (quoth he) but to Spies there is no such priviledge allowed: and now he called forth Brandiffe and Lascar, and said unto them: Lords, these be the Christian Spies, take them, and do with them as pleaseth you: These words uttered the Pilgrims were laid hold on, and then Brandiffe said: Lords, let these

these be conveyed to my strongest Castle, and put them into the deepest Dungeon: which being done, let us make hast into Angory, and beat out all our enemies; after, into France, to bring that to our subjection; all this may be easily effected, sith we have all the Peers thereof in captivity, so that there is not a man of worth to make resistance. This done, the Indian King required that amongst all those prisoners, he might have the little one to make his dwarf of (which was King Pepin, his request was likewise granted: so he took along with him King Pepin, and loved him exceedingly.

The Indian King taking his leave, every one of the Peers, looked pitifully on King Pepin, but durst not speak unto him. Pepin being on his way with the Indian, began thus to lament: How unfortunate am I among men? Alas Duke Myllon, it grieves me most for thee, for thy love towards me, hath brought thy self in danger. But for my son Henry, I lay all my curse on thee, that refusest to relieve thy father in case of extremity. Farewel Bertha my wife, & my young son Charles, thy case is most dangerous, for what will not traitors attempt against thee? By this time is the Indian come home into his own Land. When the Lady Rozamond saw his approach, she was right glad, and received him with much kindness, at last she threw her eyes on King Pepin, who was of small stature, and demanded of the King where he had that little man. Lady, said the King, he was given me at Jerusalem, being come thither with the King of France, and the twelve Peers.

But now let us return to speak somewhat of Clerimond, who was in the Court of this Indian King. The Kings manner was to send her every meal of the best meat from his own Table: And one night at supper time, called Pepin unto him, for to carry her provision, saying unto him: Go into the great chamber on the other side of the Court, there shalt thou find a foolish woman, bear this from me, Pepin did as he was commanded; but when he saw her in those base rage, he said unto her: I pitty your distressed estate: when the Lady heard him say so, she said: Friend, pitty thy self, let me alone. I am not what I seem to be: but tell me, art thou a Christian? Lady (said Pepin) I am, and come from the Realm of France. When the Lady with a smiling countenance, said: Know you then King Pepin and his Peers? Valentine: I do

quoth Pepin, and his brother Orson, and his father the Emperoz of Greece: The Lady hearing him sa so, began to shed teares, and yet speak, saying: friend, may I put trust in you: I, said King Pepin, even as well as if I were your natural father. Then thus, know for certainty, that all that I have done, is but counterfeitt, for I am a Christian, and the woful love of Valentine, that was given unto him as his Wife, but I was betrayed and stolen away by that Traitor, King Trompart: So then unfolded the manner of all these things: when B. Pepin heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, and said unto himself these words: O what trust is in this world: Alas for this poor Lady: Alas for Valentine, and yet to see it is my chance at last to find her but in this unlookt for adventure. After he had ended these lamentations, he said: Lady, now I do understand whom you are, and as you trusted me with the secrets of your heart, give me leave a little also to tell you whom I am: Here you see me, and in what shape I go clothed, yet know that I am Pepin B. of France, and by disastrous chance I am fallen in this distress. As for Valentine, know that he undertaketh dangerous adventures, and continually still without taking any rest: Now I have knowledge of you, if betwixen us we can make those things known to him, with great joy you may embrace each other. At these words the Lady stood up, but Pepin seeing her recovered, left her, and came unto the King being at supper. So here we rest to talk any more of this matter, and return to say somewhat of Brandifer and Lucar, who are busy in leading the twelve Peers of France to Prison.

Brandifer having the twelve Peers in prison, and with them Haufray and Henry, the only workers of the Treason, came unto his Castle, where he told all the whole enterprize to his daughter, how the twelve Peers fell into his hand. Having finished his tale, he conveyed them into a Dungeon, whereas the Emperoz, the Queen Knight, and Haufray lay.

Henry was much troubled, that he durst not discover his mind to Brandifer, for he was the first that was set into the Dungeon, with him Myllon Daugler, who by chance fell upon Haufray, which made him angry: Be not angry (quoth Myllon) for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you must give place.

Haufray knew after, that it was D. Myllon, and demanded of him by what means he came thither : Pay (qu. Myllon) I rather wonder how you came hither, for I am sure we left you within the City of Angory. Quoth the Traitor, I was taken for a Spy, and for that cause am I hither brought: Now are all these Lords sorrowing in Prison, but when Haufray understood that King Pepin was not among them, he seemed outwardly exceeding glad, though in heart he could wish his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, save only Orson, and he bear it it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us put trust to my Brother Valentine and Pacolet, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. Brandifer having thus made assurance, called before him his daughter Galazy, and said unto her: I must depart to raise mine Army: being there, I shall meet with the Indian King, and Lucar, both which will aid me against the French, that hold the City of Angory: therefore keep well my Prisoners, so he departed. And when he came unto his Army, he found Lucar ready: but as for the Indian King, he sent his forces, and came not himself, by reason that Rozamond was lately dead.

The two Kings gathered up their forces, and took their way towards Angory: whither being come, Valentine had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for K. Pepin. This amazed much the noble Valentine, when he saw the Tents so nigh him: At last he said Pacolet unto him, saying: I wonder I hear not of my Master Pepin. Fears not (said Pacolet) for ere long we will have better news: and therewithal departed from Angory, and never rested till he came unto the Camp of K. Lucar, who espying him, demanded of him what news, and what was become of his Master, who so long time he had served: Pacolet answered: Sir, he is long since dead, and I am come to seek a new Master. Quoth Lucar, Will thou serve me? Yes (quoth Pacolet) Thus was he received into his service, but he ill rewarded his new Master, for the same night by Enchantment, he cast Lucar into such a sleep, that he carried him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, and Lucar being placed below a tree, the enchantment ceased, and he awaked. Being awaked, he became sore astonished to see himself thus betrayed, and at last Pacolet said unto him: Master, I am

at your service, have you any thing to command me? At the which words Lucar grew much enraged, and taking a knife, gave Pacolet such a wound, that he fell down dead. Valentine seeing this accident, was exceeding sorrowful, and said: Such another friend shall I never have. *Haile Traitor* (quoth he) thou hast slain him that was all my hope, if thou hast thou shalt surely pay for it. Then said Lucar, I am glad that I have slain that *Traitor*.

Now Valentine went towards the dead Corps, and took out of his bosome a pair of writing Tables, in which was written the whole manner of his Art. These Tables had Pacolet ever made Valentine acquainted withal, wishing him that if he out-lived him, he should make great account of them; so Valentine put them up, and after made use of them. Here would Valentine have had Lucar put to death, but being better advised, he was safely kept in prison, for it so be that an worthy personage should be taken by the Pagans, then the body of Lucar should serve for ransome of the other. Thus Valentine caused the body of Pacolet to be interred in honourable manner, whose death was much bewailed of all.

The next morning there arose an out-cry throughout the Army, that Lucar was gone no man knew how: amongst the rest, Brandiffier made great lamentation, till one told him that he was in Angory, and how he had slain Pacolet, Brandiffier was glad Pacolet was slain, but sorry for Lucar: at last calling to him a messenger, he sent to Valentine, to ask him if he would deliver Lucar, for King Pepin, or the Emperour, or Orson, or any other of the twelve Peers of France: the messenger departed on his way with these conditions; and coming to the City of Angory, desired to speak with Valentine: After salutations on both parts, he declared his message, from King Brandiffier. Valentine hearing the effect of his message, was much amazed, and said to the Messenger: How cometh it to pass, that Brandiffier can make choice of all these valiant men, how became they his Prisoners? Quoth the Messenger, I think it is not unknown, how that King Pepin, accompanied with the twelve Peers of France, not long since went to Jerusalem, and having amongst them one *Traitor*, was delivered into the hands of Brandiffier, and by him taken in Jerusalem, and committed to prison: Wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, said: will you change

change one prisoner for another? Messenger, I shall give answer to thee anon: so entering into the Hall, he assembled unto him all his counsel, saying to them: Thus it is, that for our prisoner Lucar, we may have delibered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle King Pepin: now in this cause let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your natural Father, and therefore we judge it most meet to release him.

Lords (quoth Valentine) you have well advised, but yet I am determin'd to do otherwise, for you all know that my Mother was wrongfully banished, and in her exile brought me forth, and my brother in the forrest of Orleans, where we might both have been devour'd of beasts if mine Uncle K. Pepin had not taken me up. Thus he nourished and brought me up unto mans estate: After he made me kt. and hath bestowed upon me many preferments: therefore I say, these things considered, my will is, that my Uncle be set free for King Lucar, he being thus at liberty, we will quickly wock the freedom of my father, and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the wisdom of Valentine, they agreed all with one voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they unto them the Messenger of Brandiffer, and said: Friend, return this answer to thy Master, tell him that I shall willingly yeild the body of K. Lucar, upon condition that he deliver unto us the body of K. Pepin: so after due reverence done, the Messenger departed. Being returned home, he delivered his message as Valentine had delivered it to him, whereupon Brandiffer swore by the Gods he should have his request.



CHAP. XLIX.

Now Myllon Daugler (who was taken for the King of France) was delivered out of prison, instead of King Lucar. And how Valentine and the Duke Myllon issued out of the City of Angory, and wan the battel from the Sarazens: And how King Pepin was delivered in change for the King of Ir dies Marshal; and left Angory, and returned into France to succour his Wife.

Brandiffer understanding Valentines mind, he suddenly dispatched other Messengers to his Daughter Galazy, which kept

kept the strong Castle, willing her to deliver unto these messengers
 the King of France, and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hear-
 ing her fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Tay-
 lor of the prison, and commanded him to call forth the King of France.
 The Taylor went unto the Prison, calling for the King of France, for
 I am commanded to let him at liberty. M. Myllon hearing him
 say so, could not so satisfie himself, but in doubting manner said:
 I am here, wherefore do you call me forth? if it be so, that I am
 the first must suffer death, I am ready to pay it down to maintain
 my Religion. Sir (quoth the Taylor) it is no such matter, for you are to
 be deliver'd body for body, to ransom another Pagan King, which
 resteth in captivity among the Christians. When Henry heard these
 words, he repented him that he had denp'd to take upon him the
 person of the King. Thus M. Myllon took his leave with tears: the
 Emperour of Greece said unto him: Abode all, I pray remember me
 to my son Valentine, and me too (quoth Ourselves) and tell him in what
 misery we lye, requesting him, either quickly to work our deliverie,
 or we are not able to endure our lives. Myllon comforted them all
 he might, & said unto them: Lords, I will never return into France,
 till I see you at liberty: and so he took his way. Being out of pri-
 son, he went to the Lady Galazy, and did unto her reverence,
 which she kindly accepted, and commended him to his fortunes:
 So the Duke went along with the Messengers that were sent for
 the King of France. When they were come before B. andiffer, he
 said unto him: King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for
 you: & to that end I have appointed those Messengers that brought
 you hither, to conduct you into the City of Angory to Valentine, and
 in your stead, to send me back my Son Lucar, as he hath promised.
 Sir (quoth the Duke) all this shall be effected to your wish, and if
 he will not deliver King Lucar according to your expectation, I
 shall willingly come again, and yield to your mercy. Royal ly spoke,
 (quoth B. andiffer) I ask no more. So the Duke took leave, and de-
 parted with the messengers towards Angory. After few days they
 arriv'd where they had free access to the Palace where Valen-
 tine lay: being come in sight of one another, they kindly embrac-
 ed: After, Duke Myllon took Valentine aside, and related unto
 him the whole course of his actions, and how King Pep'n was led
 away

away by the Indian King, who knew not who he was, and how he had taken upon him the Kings name, onely to shield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for his deed, and began to recount what a benefit had happened to him, that he was delivered, and the rest left in bonds, for by your true loyalty to your Soberaign, you are escaped from danger. Valentine having ended this discourse, he caused R. Lucar to be brought before him: to whom he thus said; King Lucar, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my friend Pacolet, whom you have slain; these words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: now was Lucar delivered, and the D. Myllon restored in his room. Valentine having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers, the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered Troops up into battel array & with the number of 50000 fighting men, they issued out of the City upon the enemy. Brandier hearing hereof made up against him, accompanied with 24 Kings his attendants, all holding him their chief Lord, but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

When Valentine resolved to give a new on set upon the Pagans, and courageously heartning his men, he set upon that part wherein was Brandier and King Lucar. In the thickest of this battel, an Admiral (who was Lord of M. Adon) Jespying a French man, making habock with his Sword among the Pagans, he made towards him, and hitting him with his Axe, he clabe his head in two pieces: having newly done this deed, he was elpped by another French Cavalier, who making towards this Admiral in the presence of Myllon Daigler, he smote him stark dead: for the which act of valor Myllon knighted him, and said among them all, that he that won valour should receive the like reward. In this manner continued the battel all that day, even till the Sun-set. At last they strove on each part which should sound retreat first, but neither side would yield, so that the fight continued all night, till the next morning making great fires to give them light. At break of day, the battel began afresh, in most fierce manner, that blood ran down as water in Channels.

Valentine and D. Myllon betwixt themselves right valiantly, on every side they beat down both horse and man. But Valentine was too forward, for he entred so far into the enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of Brandifer. Being there, the Indian Admiral espyed him, who ran so fiercely at him, that he flew Valentines Horse under him, who perceiuing himself unhors'd, lightly got upon his feet, & with his sword helmed out a passage, but he could not have escaped, had not D. Myllon by chance relieved him with a fresh Horse. So Valentine retired himself out of the battel to refresh his tyred limbs. When the Indian Marshal saw their side had the worse, he by his policy withdrew his forces, & in the night time stole out of sight, so that at last they betook them to their heels, and ran away.

Valentine perceiuing it, told D. Myllon thereof, so they determined that Valentine and his Troops should set upon the Marshal, which they did, and fell upon the Indians in such furious manner, that they upon their first adventure brake their battel array. The Marshal seeing it thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him such a wrap with his Spear, as both Horse and man fell to the earth. Being on the ground, the Soldiers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the custody of four valiant Knights.

In this bickering there were many Prisoners of account surprized & taken, all which Valentine sent into Angory, to be kept in safety. By this time of the day, Brandiffer and Lycar knew that they had the worse, but they could not make resistance. At last, they resolved to return again into their own Countries, and reanimate their forces afresh. So wrapping up their Ensigns, they took their flight towards the Sea-coast: and the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them. Of all the Pagans multitudes that went into the field there escaped but 100 persons. They being gone, the Christians rising their tents, found inestimable treasure, & having so done, they return'd to Angory, to rest their tyred limbs.

After the Christians had won the battel, and given burial to the dead, Valentine commanded the Prisoners to be brought before him. Amongst the rest was the Marshal of India, of whom he demanded

manded if he would forsake his Mahometry? The Marshal answered that he would sooner forsake his life. Then D. Myllon demanded of what Country he was, he said: I am a Marshal of Inde, and one whom the King loveth. Quoth D. M. I'll on unto Valentine, we are made happy in this Prisoner, for in exchange of him, we shall release R. Pepin, who was led away by the Indian King to be his Dwarf, when we were taken prisoners at Jerusalem. Then they demanded of him, if the King had not in his possession, a Christian of low stature: yes (quod he) there remaineth such a one in his Court, but not as his Prisoner, and thither was he brought, when the twelve Peers of France were taken in Jerusalem. Marshal, quoth Valentine, it is he after whom we enquire, wherefore let him be brought hither and delivered to us, and you shall be set at liberty, for he is a Page whom I ever loved, attended upon my person. At these words the Marshal rejoiced, & sent Letters to the Indian King. The Messenger being dispatched, he brought Letters to the Indian King: when he had read them, he was willing to change (for he knew not that it was R. Pepin) & calling him before him, he then said: Friend, we give you free liberty to depart my Country, for my Marshal being taken among the Christians, shall be surrendered in your stead. R. Pepin thanked him, & having taken his leave of the King, he ran unto the Lady Clerimond, & said: Lady, take good heart, for I am set at liberty, and I will send Valentine unto you, who will soon make you release. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful, & Pepin departed with the Messenger towards Angory.

After some few days they arrived there, where the French-men spared for no cost, to shew their love to R. Pepin, and at last Valentine came, and said: Woble, we had good hap in taking the Marshal, for we have by that means procured your liberty. Pephem (said R. Pepin) you above all men have most cause to rejoyce, for I bring you the happiest news that ever you heard; and this it is: Fair Clerimond whom you so long have lost, is now found, and by me sendeth you hearty commendations: then he related her misfortunes, & how she had demeaned her self, to shun the love of the Indian King. Valentine hearing this so full tidings, he uttered these words: Dear Lady, thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, and cursed I, if I prove false, and for trypal hereof, I will either

purchase thy freedome, or lose mine own Life. This speech, and other affairs being ended, the Marshal was delibered. Then Valentine betook him to his Chamber to try the Tables that he took out of Pacolers bolome when he was slain, & found every thing set down, to fall out just as it was now come to pass, and taking unto him pen, ink, & paper he wrote down what there he found, & sowing it unto his Doublet (for fear of losing) it stood him in great stead after, for the safeguard of his life, as hereafter will appear.

King Pepin being resident in Angore, news was brought him from his Wife Bertha, that all France was doubtful of his Life, & of the twelve Peers of France, because they heard they were taken Prisoners by the Pagans at Jerusalem. This report running for current throughout France, hath caused Arthur K. of Britain, with a puissant Host to enter the Kingdome, and so win the Crown of France by violence. Also the said Arthur hath committed to Crise your young Son Charles. When King Pepin had heard these tidings, he grew wonderfully desperate, & presently called together all his Barons, & sat in Counsel what was requisite to be done in such a desperate plot. At last it was resolved, that King Pepin in person should depart into his own Land, to suppress the Usurper, which he accordingly did, & committing unto Valentine, he began to speak unto the king, Fair Uncle, it were most requisite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to rescue my Father, & the 12 Peers of France who (qd. K. Pepin) and if it so fall out, that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more ease compass what you intend to do.



CHAP. L.

How Valentine, under the shape of a Physician, went into India to see and speak with the fair Clerimond. And how Valentine rode away with her. And how the K. of Britain was given to K. Pepin by treason. And how Valentine took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the rest of the prisoners. And how the Emperor, Orson, & the Green Knight, kept a strong Garrison.

Garrison in his Castle and how Haufray and Henry compassed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of Greece, Orson, and the Green Knight, left the Castle, and came to the succour of Valentine in Angory. And how the Christians issued out of the City of Angory, and bid battel to the Sarazens. And how Valentine ignorantly slew his own Father; & how Myllon Dangler returned into France, & Valentine & Orson into Greece.

YOU have heard already, that B. Pepin brought news unto Valentine of the Lady Clerimond which having heard it would not out of his mind, at last he resolved to pass from Angory, to India, accompanied with one Squire, & in the shape of a Physician, he went to Sea with the Indian Merchants, being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inn-holders house till his Cloath and other habiliments were in a readinesse. At his first entrance in this Inn, the Host asked him what he was, he said, a Physician, and can cure any manner of disease. The Host believed him, and his Squire served him as his Apothecary or Clerk. In this manner, lying there about some 3 days, he called his Host to him, and desired him to get a man to go about the City, to make known his Art, and see who needed help, that I may cure them, for I would faine get something to defray my charge while I lye in your house, but in the mean space, rather than you should mistrust me, I will leave you a good pawn: Marry god, the Host with all my heart, I accept our gage: So Valentine delivered him a rich Mantle, furred quite through with costly Furs, and bad him bring before him that party, that should make known his Art. The Host went out, and brought him a ragged fellow who had not any thing to hang upon him: Valentine yet was glad of such a fellow as this, and new clothed him from head to foot, & said unto him: My friend, go thy way into the City, & cry about the same, that there is come a Physician, that can heal all manner of diseases, even Mad men or Women, he will undertake to cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and passed from place to place, to publish this Doctors skill. At last these tidings came to the King, because he had given out, that he could recover mad folks to their former senses. So the King bearing good will to the
Lady

Lady Clerimond, sent for this Physician, although he had before him many Cripples, blind, lame, and crooked, at his Lodging, but he left them all, and came unto the King, for there lay the mark at which he aimed. Being come before the King, he did his obeysance in the name of the great God Jupiter, and the King said unto him: Sir, you be welcome to my Court, first dine, and then I shall tell you further the cause of my sending for you. The King being set and served, made Valentine also to be richly attended, & dinner being done: said unto him: Sir, I have a beauteous Lady in this Palace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, she would by no means consent, until the term of one year was expired: I granted her to forbear that year, as she demanded, but at the end she was possessed with a Lunacy, insomuch that none durst come within her reach: sometimes she whistles, anon she cryeth out in a pitiful manner: another while she laugheth, and then she falleth into a flood of tears, so that my heart is ever charged with sorrow for her: If now your skill extend it self to cure her, I will give you more wealth then you can ask: for my wife Rozemond being dead, I would make her Queen of England. My Lord (qd. Valentine) fear not but she shall do well, for she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath seized her so long. Again, I must be with her all night, to mark the manner of her fits: you shall (quoth the King) have one appointed to bring you thither, but look to your self, lest she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided Valentine to her window, now go thy way, & leave me alone. When Valentine beheld her in this desperate case, he said: Alas my Love, you have bought me dear, as I have you, but by the Gods I swear, I shall never return again to France, till I have you along with me, or here lose my life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, & whatsoever came first to hand, she threw at him, which much amazed Valentine. Then said Valentine, is this true madness, or but feigned? Dear Love (qd. he) tell me the truth, I am Valentine your Love, for whom I have suffered all this damage, think on the Baysen-head that you gave me, or of my Mother Orson that had the stringent in his mouth, or how you were stolen away by the Enchanter Admain. When the Lady had heard this, she fell into a swoon for

for joy; and being again recovered, he said: Alas my love, how many dangers have we passed through? you for me, & I for you? And now behold in what baseness I have carried my self for thee? Lady, Love dearly bought is the sweetest. By this time the Trumpets sounded to bring in the Kings Meat for Supper, so that he said unto the Lady: My Love, I will go into the Pallace, but after Supper I will come again, for the King knoweth not but I am a Physician, and hath sent for me to heal you, the Lady bad him go. Being come into the Pallace, as soon as the King saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady, Yes (quoth Valentine) to morrow you shall hear her speak as discretely as ever she did. The King was so joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a rich Mantle, all beset with precious stones, and caused him to sit down at his own Table. After Supper, Valentine said unto the King, it is necessary I have a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is, for she will be extream sick all this night. Well, quoth the King, let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now Valentine taketh his way towards the Chamber of fair Clerimond, with one who carried wood to make this fire withal, which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his Squire, then Valentine shut all the doors & windows, and said unto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleasure, and casting his eye aside, he espied the Horse of Pacolet, and asked her whose it was, who answered, Pacolet: then said Valentine, let us hence immediately, whereunto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with Pacolet's Horse, mounted him, with Clerimond and his Squire, in a Moon shine night, and with great expedition hasted unto the City of Angory, being come thither, Valentine caused the gates thereof to be opened, and there was great joy for the Lady Clerimond. The next Morning Valentine caused her to be clad in rich habiliments, & married her. By this time the King knew of her escape, and grew frenzied, & said: Ha, thou false Enchanter, hast thou thus deceived me? If thou fall once again into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of thy life and so he caused pursuit to be made after Valentine, but all in vain: for they found him not. Hear leave me them. Now I proceed to tell you of King Pepin, how he hasted into France to the

success



Incount of Bertha his wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The King
 of Brittain not thinking what would happen. Strengthened himself
 with all the forces he could make, and sent out proclamation that
 all that could bear arms should assist him into France. Hereupon
 Queen Bertha with her young Son Charles fled to Lyons to seek
 succour : At the same time lived a worthy and trusty Carl of An-
 joy, who favouring the Queen, and pitying her distress, fortified
 his Castle against the Britains, to whom the Queen sent 4000
 Horse to keep the passage. At last the King of Brittain bid the
 Carl give him passage into France, but he answered, No: Hereup-
 on there was appointed a band of souldiers, to lay siege at Argiers,
 but the Carl kept close within the City, and would not issue out
 thereof. During the siege was King Pepin come to Paris, & there
 was joyfully receiv'd, when the Queen understood he was at Pa-
 ris, she hastned unto him, and when she came before him, in tears,
 she said: dear Lord, revenge us on this Usurper. Lady (quoth the
 King) fear it not. So calling about him his Counsellours, and
 men

men of war, he made haste to furnish up his companies, and many there were that voluntarily offered themselves to do the King any service. By this time the King of Britain heard that King Pepin was come against him with a great Army, which feared him, and not without cause. But see what followed, for his own friends betrayed him to K. Pepin, only to save their own estates, and make their peace the better with the King. So resolving hereupon, on a night they came to him, lying on his bed, and led him perforce before K. Pepin, who presently caused his head to be smitten off, with- in the City of Paris. Now they thought that betrayed him, all was well, but the King afterwards seized all their Lands into his own hands.

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from imprisonment, for he knew well, that the Castle was not to be won by War, or Policy, nor by any thing, but by treason, at last he resolved on a subtle plot, and thus it was: He put to Sea 12 Ships, manned with 2000 men, and laden with all manner of riches, as precious Stones, and Silks, and thus as Merchants, arrived they before this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the Shape of a Merchant, setting a rich Croon on his head, and said unto his men: Be you all privately armed within the ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Saracens come aboard, put them to death. Then coming toward the Castle gate, with the Croon on his head, the Porter said: What bring you hither? Friend, said Valentine, I am a Merchant, going into Spain, and having many rich commodities, I hear say, that I might not pass without a tribute, on pain of death. Said the Porter, I will go to my Lady, and bring you an answer: so he went to Galazy, and told his message: the Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said unto her Seneschal: Go and receive the tribute due to me, of the Merchant, and take along with you a sufficient company of Souldiers, lest they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, and coming to the Ships, they found inestimable Gems, inasmuch as they were ravished there- with, so they taking the value of the tribute due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians, that lay hid in the ship, let upon them, & slew them. Then Valentine said unto them: Except we go forwards in
this

this enterprize, we shall never gain the Castle: And therefore he caused fifty of his men to put on the Sarazens Cloths over their Armour, and so lading themselves with Sikes and precious Stones, took their way towards the Castle.

The Porter tyed up the Lyons, let down the draw-bridge, and thirsting after some great reward, went beyond his bounds, in so much as Valentine led him to the Ships, being come, Valentine shewed him their dead bodies, and said, I will make you like one of these, if you give me not passage into this Castle. Sir (quod the Porter) I shall do it: why then (quod Valentine) I will reward thee. Come, said the Porter, and bring all those men whom you have clad in the habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, and let them enter one by one, which they did: so being entered, the Porter shewed them a secret postern, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the doores to be set open, then minded he his horn, at which all those in the ships hastened unto them. When he entered the chamber of the Lady Galazy, who was affronted thereat: but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas, to have a sight of your royal presence: then he had him welcome, and highly feasted him. Valentines men having entered the Castle, with their fronts so disguised the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Knight, save my Virginity. Lady (quod he) Fear not, for there is none that dares attempt any dishonour towards your person. By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain and Valentine having unto the Dungeon, did break it open, and cried out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. Orson knowing his voice, replied: Brother, you are welcome, how came you hither? Valentine said: I am come to let you at liberty. At these words, the Emperour fell into a swoon, but Orson suddenly recovered him: then they came out of the Dungeon, in ragged cloaths, and ill-coloured faces, but the Christians rebelled for the space of 7 days in the Castle, and Orson falling in love with Galazy, after the death of Bezan married her, by whom he had a Son (named Orsay) who after had the Empire at Constantinople.

These affairs being thus brought to an end, a counsel was called what was best to be done: at last they resolved to leave a Carlsson to resist the enemy: Some said it was fitting that Haufrey and

and Henry should undertake this task : but Haufray replied : Not we, for we are determined to go into France, to serue our Father. **Orson**, if you be so resolu'd, we haue small reason to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treason in you. At these words Haufray and Henry was displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was resolu'd that the Emperour should take his rest, and his Son **Orson**, and the Green Knight should remain there to defend the Castle, whilst Valentine and the rest adressed themselves for Angory. Now will we look into the treason of Haufray and Henry, who being come into France, laid a plot to take away the life of their Father, little Charles his Son, and Bertha the Queen: being come to Paris, the King royally feasted them, & after demanded what news of the Emperour, Valentine, Orson, and the rest : **Orson** the Traitors they were all slain in a battell at Angory, at which the King wored wondrous sad. After this they poisoned the King and Queen. Now little Charles was still living : who (as the Gods would haue it) hapned vnder the safe keeping of Myllon Daugler.

The King and Queen being both thus treacherously poisoned, the two Traitors seemed to be exceeding sorrowfull, but **Orson** Myllon Daugler, being a man of a valiant and courageous spirit, forthwith caused a counsel to be holden, wherein he would haue crowned young Charles King of France, but Haufray and Henry by bribes to corrupted the Lords, that Charles was held too young. Whereupon **Orson** Myllon was committed to prison, for standing on the Chilos part, and Charles held as a Kitchen boy.

A little after, it hapned that Haufray commanded Charles to turn a spit, but the boy being full of Majesty, took up the spit, and felled him to the earth. At his out steps Henry, thinking to imite the child, but he being ready to receiue him, gave him such a blow on the ear, that the blood issued out of his mouth. Then Haufray commanded his men to lay hold upon him, but there came a Knight which took Charles by the hand, and conuey'd him to Paris. The Traitors percelving Charles was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Whereupon **Orson** Myllon told his wife thereof, who was sister to Charles. The Lady could not behold the same for teares, but vowed that they should dearly pay for these treasons, and forthwith caused Letters to be written into Angory,

unto Valentine, and the twelve Peers of France. These Letters came first into the hands of Valentine, who could not chuse but weep at this act of Villany. The Lords perceiving his tears, asked the cause: he answered: M. Pepin and the Queen are dead, and as for Charles, the two accursed Brothers, Haufrey and Henry, have chased him out of the Countrey, imprisoned M. Myllon, and all that held on young Charles his side: these are the contents of these Letters, and the Lady that sendeth them, requireth help to apprehend these Rebels. These sad tidings put them to their wits end, and lying between two extremes, knew not which way to take, for Brandiffer was daily expected with an Army of many thousands. At last Valentine said: E're to morrow night I will set free Duke Myllon, or else my skill shall deceive me: at which they laughed heartily. Valentine departed; and with Pacolets horse he suddenly arrived at Paris, where by his Art he opened the Gates, and released all the Prisoners, and being shewed the Chamber where M. Myllon was, he entered the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him, & said: Sir, I am Valentine, which am come to set you free. Then he mounted him on his horse, and bad him not speak, for he was to pass through the air. The Duke prayed him to pass by the Castle of Angore, that he might but see his wife, which he did, and being come to the Lady thereof, who presently ran and kissed him, demanding of him whether he went: Lady (quod he) I go to fight against the Infidels, to bring home the twelve Peers of France, with an Army to overthrow Haufrey and Henry, and to succour Charles. Having refreshed themselves with meat, they set forth towards Hungary. Being come, they came before all the barons, who were much astonished at Valentines Art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man. Now was Brandiffer with his host come within a mile of Angore, and there planted his siege. The Citizens hearing hereof, shut up their Gates, drew up their Bridges, and after got on the Walls, lying a month together, without making any resistance.

The Emperour hearing that Brandiffer had begun Angore, with to huge an Arm, resolved to leade the Strong Castle to the guard of a Knight. So the Emperour, Orson, and the Greek took ship, accompanied with a 1000 Soldiers: being at sea, they saw

a great fleet of ships coming to them, and at last they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men, going to the succour of Brandifer: the Christians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, so that there chanced a bloody battel: great valour was shewn on both sides, but they knew not whether the victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admiral encountering a Christian Knight, tumbled him over a ship-board: Orson standing by him, grew angry, and taking his Ar, struck him stark dead. This deed discouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themselves, all that night ready to fight, having lost 15 tall ships, and 4000 men. Then the Emperour said: Lords, let us arm our selves with such weapons, as here we have seized from the Pagans; which they presently did, but this enterprise was fatal. For the Emperour was slain by his own Son Valentine, who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hoise sail again, and at last arrived in Angory.

After a months siege, Valentine sent a defiance to Brandifer, offering him battel. The Christians divided their battel into ten Squadrons, whereof D. Myllor was their General. The second Sampson of Orleans: the third Earl of Vandom: the fourth Earl of Campagne: the fifth Quincine of Normandy: the sixth the D. of Burgoyne: the seventh the Earl of Dampmartin: the eighth the Earl of Asserve: the ninth the Marshal of Constantinople: the tenth was Valentine, who added courage unto all the rest. Being in order, they issued out of the City to assail Brandifer, who had divided his Army into fifteen Squadrons, and that Squadron which had the least Commander, was a King. At the joining of these battels, a certain Pagan (that never before had been in wars) couched his Spear in his rest, and would be the foremost man, but Valentine thinking to cool his pride, ran against him, and struck him down dead. Then they fell to it pell mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly. The Indian King entering the battel, made very much slaughter, but Valentine meeting him, gave him such a counter-buff, that he sat him besides his horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, and caused the Infidels to give round, but there came in a Sarazen Captain, with 30000 men, and continued the battel more hotter then before. By this time M. Lucar lighted on the Indian King, and lent him succor.

From the Christians began to retire, insomuch that they had been forced to a shameful flight, had not two valiant Knights arrived in Angory, with 700 men at arms (the which lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, and suffered much misery) entered the field. The one of them brought into France the daughter of a rich Admiral, called Cfaridine, and caused her to be baptized: the name of the one was Reynard of Province, the other Myllon of Dyon. At their approach the Pagans were much discomfited, for Myllon of Dyon at his first encounter smote B. Lucar stark dead, & at the next, another B. called Rubre, which accident much amazed Brandisfer. At another part of the battel rushed in Reynard, and slew many of them. Valentine wondered at these two knights of Chivalry, and coming towards them, said: Lords, you are welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance came you hither? Friend (quod Reynard) we are Lords of France, and lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. I am called Reynard Lord of Province, and my companion is called Myllon of Dyon. Quoth Valentine: Once again heartily welcome, for Myllon Daugler is here, and all the Peers of France: so they jointly rushed afresh into the Battel. All this while the Indian King had a spleen at Valentine, for his last disgrace, & finding him out, accompanied only with three other Kings, they so encountered Valentine, that they did smite him and his horse to the ground. Being down, he quickly recovered, and drawing out his sword, defended himself therewith, but with much danger. At last D. Myllon, Sampson, and Gravis, came unto his succour, getting a fresh horse for him. Valentine being mounted, made his course against the Indian B. again, and striking him down, took from him his shield, which he kept (for he had lost his own.) This ended, tidings came that a great Fleet of Sarazens was coming near unto the Haven. Whereupon Valentine said: Lords, let us presently go strengthen the passages: so Valentine and the D. Myllon of Dyon went to the Haven, but these were all friends and Christians, amongst whom was his father the Emperoz of Greece, of whom you shall hear more at large.

The Emperoz having landed his men, Valentine saluted him with his spear in his rest. The Emperoz (who bare the shield of a Sara-

Strizen, unknown) encountered with his Son. At last Valentine
 ran his spear quite through his fathers body, that he fell down dead.
 His Father being dead, he said; montioy vive Greece. Orson see-
 ing his Father dead did weep, and said unto Valentine: Brother,
 there is small conquest in this, for you have slain your Father.
 When he heard him say so, he fell in an extasse from his horse. To
 this lamentation of the two Brothers, came Reynard of Province,
 and Myllon of Dyon to comfort them, saying: Knight have pati-
 ence, for tears cannot recal him: Alas, said Valentine, what have I
 done! It were happy for me, if death would take me from this
 world: I have committed this fact, detestable both to God and men:
 What will become of me? my life have I passed away in troubles,
 toyments, and cares, and now to add more sorrow to my days, I
 have shed the blood of my dear Father. Brother Orson, take my
 sword and cut off my head, that the earth may not bear so bloody
 a Butcher. Brother, said Orson, depart not thus, but repent, and no
 doubt but you shall be forgiven. So comforting him in this man-
 ner, at last they got him to his horse, whereon being mounted, he
 ran throughout the Pagan troops so furiously, that all they that
 stood in his way perished. Now began the battel to encrease, and
 King Christopher slew the Christians on every side. At last Valen-
 tine meeting him, gave him such a canvasado, that he pierced his
 body quite through. In this battel the Duke Myllon of Dyon, and
 Reynard of Province, rushed so fierce into the battel of the enemy,
 that they were taken Prisoners, yet notwithstanding their adverse
 fortunes, they got their liberties once again, and made Charles
 King of France, with honour and joy, to the destruction of Haufay
 and Henry, the two notable traitors: yet was not this fierce, blig-
 e tedious battel ended, for they stood it out manfully on either side.
 Valentine being careless of life, at last met with Brandisher, who
 encountered each other so fiercely, that both fell to the earth, but
 Valentine suddenly recovered himself, took the King a blow that
 he receivd his head. A. Drumme seeing his Brother slain, departed
 out of the field, with the Admiral of Cordes, and A. Joshua, who
 caused a retreat to be sounded: the Christians following, slew many
 thousands, and others leapt into the sea, and drowned themselves.
 So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City.

next morning in burying the dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperoz of Greece. Then his body was so ally interred in in the City of Angory, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to the worse before Angory, D. Myllon took his leave of Valentine to return into France, saying: Valentine, I would I could return as swiftly back as you brought me hither? Friend (said Valentine) I would I had never known the Art, for it hath brought nothing but vexation and shame on me, and him an untimely death that taught it me: so the D. Myllon departed. Valentine and Orson intended to go for Greece, but before their departure, they crowned the Green Knight King of Angory. After leave taken, Orson called the fair Galazy unto him, and said, Love I know you are with child by me, yet I cannot wed you, for that I have another wife, but before I go, I will make certain Lands over unto you, for your maintainance, that you may hereafter live of your self, without the help of any other. All these offers she denped, but said, she would go to Sea with him, and after confine me to some Religious house, wherein I may spend the residue of my days. Agreed (quoth Orson:) and so he took her with him to Constantinople. Being come thither, they sent word to the Emperess of their Fathers death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowful for her husband, but joyed at the sight of her children, so did all the City likewise, making great triumphs throughout the same. The Emperess being one day at dinner, said unto her Sons: Valentine, it must be agreed betwixt you, who shall be Emperoz. Orson replied: It appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholding to you, you nothing to me, therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should jointly Govern, but Valentine continued not long in that state of dignity: for shortly after, on a morning, he called to him Clerimond, and said thus unto her: Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my conscience remaineth still troubled for the fact, and I am therefore minded to go on Pilgrimage. Commend me to my Mother, and my Brother Orson, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen days be passed over, and then give him this Letter: all which the Lady must consent unto, although in tears.

CHAP. LI.

How Valentine took leave of C'erimond before his Pilgrimage, and how K. Hugon demanded Clerimond for his Wife; and how he betrayed Orson and the Green Knight: and how Galeran delivered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made: How Bellysant and Clerimond came to know King Hugons treason: and how Galeran lost his head: and how Orson and the Green Knight were set free.

Then Valentine said: Lady, cease your tears, and give me your Wedding Ring: she having done so, he brake it in two pieces, keeping the one half, and giving her the other, saying:



My Love, keep thy half, and whatsoever you hear, believe nothing, till you see this other half, which I possess. At these words he embraced her, and wept bitterly, and so departed, only one Page with him. Having long travelled; at last he came to Rome, there coming into the presence of a Hermit, he confessed the death of his Father: the Hermit seeing him so penitent, enjoined him penance: 1. Change thy habit, and go barely clothed, and 7 years lye under the stairs of thy Palace, without speaking any words; thou shalt neither eat nor drink, but of the scraps that come from thine own table; do this, and fear not thy sins. Sir, said Valentine, all this I will do: so after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his servant: after this, Valentine entered into a wood, feeding upon roots, and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst men.

Orson having now read the Letter that Clerimond delivered him, wept bitterly, inasmuch as the Lady said unto him: Brother, cease your laments. Alas, said Orson, I have great cause, for this Letter sheweth, that my Brother will never return. Hereat the Lady swooned, and recovering her self, she said: Why hath my Love hidden his intent from me: but all her sorrow could not call him home again. Rydings was spread through the City, that Valentine would never return: Clerimond weiled, Belysant complained, and Orson sighed. Now (as the story saith) the Lady Fezon hearing that Orson had got another Lady with Child, she died with grief. Being dead, Orson made a years solemnity of her funeral, and after married Salazr, of whom you have heard before.

Now I shall shew you how Valentine came back to Constantinople in beggerly weeds, inasmuch that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last he went into his Brothers Palace about supper time, and those that waited on the table beat him away: Orson seeing them so churlish, had them let him alone, for I am willing that all poor men should be received, for my Brothers Valentines sake, that so we may hear rydings of him. After this they brought him meat and wine, but he espying a basket wherein the scraps were put, eat thereof which amazed the beholders. Night being come, the servants asked Orson if he would let that counterfeit hide in his Palace. I (qu. Orson) for it may be so, some

how

hole which he hath made. Thus abode Valentine, and made his bed under the staire, of straw. On the morrow, Orson passing by, gave him money, after came his mother, and his wife Clerimond, and they gave him money, saying: How can you endure thus naked, without cloaths? this night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his money to two poor men standing by him who scoffed him for his labour: next day at dinner, they gave him variety of meats, which he refused, and made signs for the Alms-basket: Orson, to try him yet farther, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then said Orson: Surely this is some how that he hath made unto the Gods. Thus Valentine thus remained within the Palace without being known that all men thought him dead.

In these days there was a King of Hungaria, named Hugon, who heard that Valentine had given over the Empire of Greece, unto his Brother Orson. This Hugon came to Constantinople, and was honourably received. After his arrival he came to a Lady Clerimond, and said: I am King of Hungaria and have no wife, and for that purpose I am come hither to crave your love, I know that Valentine is dead, or else that he will never return; wherefore Lady grant me thy love, and thou shalt be Queen of Hungaria. Sir, quod the Lady, I thank you for your Kingly proffer, but to be your wife, I cannot, for sure my Valentine liveth, and for seven years I will every day expect his return: besides, when I make choice of a husband, my brother Orson and the Green Kt. must know, for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards Orson, and demanded of him, if he heard any tidings of his Brother, Great B. (quod Orson) no, I heard that he left me a Letter, the which his wife delibered me, and certified me that he is gone to exile, and beareth about him half the King that he was married withal, the other half he left with her, charging her that she believeth nothing of him, till she see the other half which he possessed. The Gods be his good speed, quod Hugon, for he was a worthy Knight: But one thing, quod Hugon, have I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a journey to Jerusalem, to visit the holy Shrine, so you would bear me company. With all my heart (quod Orson) but let us go to Angory, and take with us the Green Kt. who is K. thereof: it shall be

so, qd. Hugon, to Orson taking leave of his Mother, and his Wife Galazy, came to Angory, and was received with great joy. Having feasted there, they took their way to Jerusalem. Being come into the City (while they were beholding others Monuments) Hugon stole away from them to the B. of Sury, and said; I have a message to deliver worth your attention. There is newly arrived here two worthy Knights, that are your greatest enemies, for they slew B. B. and sister, B. L. car, and your brother B. of India. Whisen Raballre heard all that he could say, he was very sorry for the death of his brother, & said unto Hugon: Can you deliver me these two Knights? yes, (said the traitor), so you will give me their golden seals. Sir, qd. he, them and much more will I give you. When hearken, send unto the Barlarks house, and he will tell you where they are. The King presently sent out 800 armed men, and found them at dinner, then they took them, and brought them unto the King. False enemies (qd. the King) to our lives and religion, my heart even leapest for joy, that I have gotten you, tell me what is your names? My name is Orson, and this is the Cyen Knight: You are the men I look for, & there is another called Valentine, had I him also, I would are you all alike: then he caused their seals to be taken away, and given to Hugon, & they to be cast into a dungeon, and fed only with bread and water. From all this while they knew not what was become of Hugon, for they thought best, he had been slain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with another traitor in the City, called Galeran, and began thus to salute him: Galeran, my desire is to employ your secret in a matter of import, and I will reward thee sufficiently. Uncle (qd. Galeran) fear me not. I know your drift, you would obtain the lovely Clerimond: True (said Hugon) therefore let us write a Letter in the name of Orson, and we will seal it with his Seal; and the Letter shall be thus framed.

Orson, by the power of the Gods, Emperor of Syria, unto the thrice Renowned Sovereign Lady my Mother: unto you my Love Galazy, and my Sister Clerimond, greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, requiring nothing but patience: Ladies, know that I have found my Brother Valentine on his death-bed, at Jerusalem, and a little before his last gasp, he charged me to salute Clerimond in his Name.

Name, and comend her, that in ever the marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband; the cause why he sent not the half Ring, was, for that it was stolen from him in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, Orson wrote another Letter, saying:

Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my Brother Valentine, but now we wish you, for the great beauty where-with you are adorned, first, to accomplish the desire of the dead; secondly, to increase your honour, we advise you to match with Hugon Prince of Hungarie, as you will avoid our displeasure, And for further authority, we have sealed these Letters with our own Seals. Again, know, that we cannot yet return, for great wars is fallen between the Infidels and Christians: so we leave you to the tuition of the Gods.

These Letters being sealed, Hugon gave them to Galeran, to bear to Constantinople, himself following after: By this means thinking to get the Lady, Galeran being in Constantinople, delivered his Letters to the Lady Belysant, who commanded that he should be highly thanked. Afterward, she called one to read them, and Valentine lying in the Hall, heard the contents thereof. Being read, the Ladies grew exceeding sorrowful for the death of Valentine, but especially the Lady Clerimond, pitteously lamenting his misfortunes, said: How unhappy amongst women am I? Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to see thy body laid up safe in the earth? Whilom Brother, and the Green Knight, who are you two such mortal enemies, as to wish me to marriage so soon after my Valentines death, seeing I have lost so noble, courageous, and loving a Knight, the nephew of Chiblatr, the hope of Rome, the example of constancy, and the patron of truth? Death, that thou art not one death left to those at this party, Death, for losing my life to nothing but sorrow, I will never have other husband, but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my days. All this old Valentine beheld, which he pitied, but desiring to be known, he bursted it in silence. Belysant seeing Clerimond thus broken, said: Daughter, have patience: For when he was my Son, and I sorrowed for him at my heart, but when I consider he cannot be fetched back to me, I pass it over, and rather think on what your Brother, and my Son Orson say unto you now. Good speed, (saith the Lady)

say no more, for I shall never marry, and therewith went weeping to her Chamber, and Valentine he lay under the Raids, musing how these treasons should come about. Some four days after, King Hugon came to Constantinople, and was received with great honour, but Clerimond shewed him no good entertainment. Being there, he said unto the Empress: You understand of the death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: but it is agreed upon, that I shall marry the Lady. Sir, (quoth Clerimond) I am not willing to marry you, nor any other. All this treason Valentine heard. But in the end, the matter was so argued, that Hugon had the Lady, which much increased his joys, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Discourses to the Gods, the Devils made answer to him on this manner: Valentine get thee out of the City, there shalt thou find without the Gates a Pilgrim, take his Pilgrim weeds, and when thou hast put them on, get thee to the Palace, and there thou shalt reveal before all courtiers the Treason practised against thy Love, for in this disguise thou canst not be discovered. Valentine did as he was commanded, came to the Court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, & amongst them was the Traitor, Hugon, even he that uttered such reproachful words against Clerimond. Now Valentine came to Belysant, saying: Lady, I beseech you shew me the wife of Valentine, whereat Hugon blushing replied: Pilgrim, get thee gone into the Kitchen, for this is no place for thee. Sir, said Valentine, I would fain do a message to her: wouldst thou? said the Lady, I am she whom thou desirest to see: When thou, I have lately seen your love Valentine, that by me sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within three days he will be with you. Pilgrim (quoth the Lady) advise well thyself what thou speakest, for I heard my Love is dead. Lady (quoth the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I protest to deliver my body to death, if it be not true as I have said. Hugon hearing these words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his horse, and never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were much amazed at the Pilgrim's tale, and offered to feast him, but he would not, only he said to them, Ladies, pardon me, I pray, for I have certain companions in the Prison, which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: but Clerimond would grant him for his pains, giving him money which

which he bountifullly bestowed again upon the servants.
Presently after it was demanded what was become of M. Hugon, a Dimosel standing by, said: I saw him now take horse, but what is become of him I cannot tell. *H. p. 122. c. 12.*
Upon these words Galeran came in, and they demanded of him what was become of his Uncle Hugon, who making no reply, Bellisant grew enraged, and said: You shall not escape till you have revealed the Treason Hugon hath practised against us. Then Galeran said: Lady, take mercy on me, and I shall tell you all. Hugon, I pardon thee. My Uncle is guilty of treason, and hath sold to the Pagans, the Emperour Orson, and the Green Knight: which tale soe daunted the assembly, but Galeran was presently hanged. When Valentine leaving the habit of a Pilgrim, returned again unto the Palace, Clerimond espying him, said: Good man, where have you been? Methinks you seem displeased, because I said, I will not marry. Valentine replied not at all, but left her, yet she not so contented at his desertion, caused a costly quilt to be brought for him to lodge upon, but he refused it.

King Sury having Orson and the Green Knight in hold, caused them to be brought before him, and said unto them, Lords, you see you are now at my mercy, wherefore I hold, you shall never escape with life, except you resign back unto me the City of Angora, which you with hold from me. Orson replied, we will never consene hereunto, except thou give M. Hugon unto us: the King said unto them: speak not of him, for he is the traitor which hath sold you into my hands, and hath carried with him your seals. Orson marvelled much hereat, and thowze that he would never rest, until he were revenged on him, and so did the Green Knight also. *H. p. 123. c. 13.*

Now it fell out, that these prisoners were content to yield to the Kings command, and so returned to Constantinople. Being come home, Clerimond told him, that she had heard tidings of Valentine, which much rejoiced Orson, who lying with his wife that night, got a Son called Moran, who after ruled Angora, a short time after. Orson gathered an Host of men to go for Angora, which when Hugon heard, he offered him the same City, and four horse-load of gold, and if there were any man that call him Traitor, Orson excepted he would fight with him. The Green Knight accepted.

accepted his challenge, and they armed themselves, & the Green Mt. came first into the battell. All things set in order, they encountered each other with their spears, next with their swords, but at last the Green Mt. gave King Hugon such a stroke on his helmet, that he cut part of his head even to his shoulders, so that he fell into a swoon. When the Green Mt. got the honour of the day, his rebellious again, requested a Confessor, and uncovering all the treason, presently dyed in the place. Orson notwithstanding, caused his body to be suspiciously interred, as to the person of a King apprehended. At last Hugons treason being blown abroad, by the Podes content, rendered the City to the Emperor Orson. This being ended, they returned into Constantinople. At whose coming home Valentine rejoiced, but Clerimond marvelled that she saw not Valentine as the Pilgrim had said unto her. Little suspecting that he was so near her, for he remained under the Palace stairs, where he spent his hostile end his life, and then it shall be known, when we shall come to the end of this story.

CHAP. LII.

How at the end of seven years, Valentine dyed in the Palace of Constantinople: and how Orson turned Hermit.

AT the end of seven years, Valentine fell into a mortal disease, whereof he dyed. Before his death an Angel appeared to him, saying: Valentine, thy glass is run, for within four hours thou shalt dye: whereat he greatly rejoiced, making signs for pen, ink, and paper; when he had it, he wrote that it was himself that appeared like a Pilgrim, and discovered the treason. After putting so it his name, he closed up the paper, putting in the other half of the Ring that he had kept; shortly after he laid him down and dyed.

When Orson saw that he was dead, he was troubled in mind. The poor man being dead, held a letter in his hand, which Orson would have taken out, but could not then cause Clerimond, and as soon as she laid hold thereon, the hand opened it self. Clerimond breaking up the Letter, and knowing the half Ring, said: Alas, we shall shortly hear news of Valentine: So a Secretary was employed to read it: at the reading hereof, great lamentation on each

side, but especially of Clerimond, who falling upon the dead body, said: Alas, I have lost all my joy, comfort and hopes: for that my Love should die so near my person, and I know not of it. Now great preparation were made for his funeral Rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Constantinople. Clerimond afterward betook her to a single life. Thus having shown the death of Valentine, and what became of Clerimond; Let us return to Orson who ruled the Empire of Constantinople seven years, and by his second Wife Galazy, he had a Son named Mo'am, who after was King of Angory.

After 7 years were expired Galazy died, for whom the Emperor Orson was exceedingly sorrowful, and in the end betook him to the Woods, where as he fed on Bread and Roots, and such as he found. It happened one night that he saw a Vision, it seemed to him more glorious then his tongue could utter. After this Vision he awaked, and being astonished hereat, with tears he came to the Green Knight, and said: Sir I see the uncertainty of the world, for which I am willing to resign my estate and Children unto you: see them well educated, that they may by you be made fit to govern such a people, for I will spend the rest of my days in solitary contemplation. When the Green Knight had heard these words, he wept bitterly, but Orson recomforted him, saying: Weep not, but pray for me, as I for you, that you may accomplish that which I put you in trust withal. With this Orson departed, charging the Green Knight not to tell it to any. So taking his way towards a Wood, he there spent the remainder of his days. The Green Knight after so governed his children that they carefully spent their time on earth, and followed their Father to his Grave.

FINIS.

The

The Table.

HOW K. *Pepin* banished his Queen *Bertha*, and how he gave his Sister *Bellysant* in marriage to *Alexander* the Emperour of *Constantinople*. chap. 1

How the Arch-priest of *Constantinople*, betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Master, in making love to the Empress, and what evil followed thereupon. chap. 2

How the Arch-Priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Bellysant*, to save his own honour practised treason against the innocent Lady. chap. 3

How the Arch-priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress *Bellysant* who was lately banished. chap. 4

How *Bellysant* in her banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were *Valentine* and *Orson*, & how she lost them. chap. 5

Of the Bear that bare away one of the Lady *Bellysant's* children. chap. 6

How by the Counsel of the Arch-Priest, new Customs, and Taxations were raised through the City of *Constantinople*, and how the treason came to light. chap. 7

How the Emperor by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for K. *Pepin* to see the Combat fought between the Arch-Priest, and the Merchant. chap. 8

How the Merchant and the High-Priest encountred at the place appointed about the clearing of *Bellysant*, and what a glorious victory did betide the Merchant. chap. 9

How K. *Pepin* returned from *Constantinople* into *France*, and after sailed to *Rome*, to fight against the *Sarazens* that had surprized that City. chap. 10

How K. *Pepin* besieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* jested with the Admiral of the *Sarazens*, and slew him, whereby the City was won again from the *Sarazens*. chap. 11

How

The Table.

- How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did shew towards *Valentine*. chap. 12
- How *Valentine* conquered his brother *Orson*, in the Forrest of *Orleance*. chap. 13
- How *Valentine* having conquered *Orson* the wild-man, departed from the Forrest towards *Orleance*, whereas *K. Pepin* was resident. chap. 14
- How *Haufray* and *Henry* took counsel together, to murder *Valentine* in the Chamber of *Eglantine*. chap. 15
- How Duke *Savary* sent unto *K. Pepin* for aid against the Green-Knight, who would have his daughter in Marriage against his will. chap. 16
- How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitain*, at a solemn just there holden, to bare away the love of the beauntious Lady *Fezon*. chap. 17
- How *Haufray* & *Henry*, accompanied with a troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the life of *Valentine*. chap. 18
- How *Orson* & *Grygar* fought together, how *Orson* returnd victor, caused *Grygar* to confess the treason, who was after hanged, & *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon. chap. 19
- How *Grygar* being vanquished by *Orson*, confessed his Treason to *K. Pepin*, & how *Haufray* & *Henry* had bin the on'y ploters thereof, against the worthy *Valentine*. chap. 20
- How *Orson* conquered the Green Knight, & what folowed thereof: also, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him. chap. 21
- How *Valentine* took good advice, and sent *Orson* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, & how *Orson* overcame him. chap. 22
- Orson* having conquered the Green-Knight, *Valentine* caused him to be Christned, and sending him to *K. Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green-Knight. chap. 23
- How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon* an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge she gave unto him. chap. 24

The Table.

How *K. Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman* : and how the *Green Kr.* submitted himself; according to his promise made unto *Valentine*. chap. 25

How King *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*; to bear these tydings : and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty *Souldan*, who had beleaguered *Constantinople*. chap. 26

How the *Green-Knight* justed against the two *Sarazens*, and having slain the one, the other fled : and how King *Pepin* & his Host was lodged within *Constantinople*. chap. 27

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle, where fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the *Brazen-Head* they had knowledge of their Parents. chap. 28

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*. And how he justed for the entrance, and overcame the *Seneschal*. chap. 29

How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the *Green Kr.* gave him, and how he questioned with the *Brazen-Head*, which told him from whence he was descended. ch. 30

How the *Giant Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*; by the means of one *Pacoler* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter. ch. 31

How *Pacoler* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugal*, to see the Lady *Bellysant*, *Valentine's* Mother, & of his returning back, and the news that he brought. ch. 32

How *Valentine* & *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how he committed them to Prison; with their woful lamentation. ch. 33

How *Pacoler* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies. ch. 34

How by Art *Pacoler* set free *Valentine* and *Orson* from the prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the fair *Clerimond*. ch. 35

How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus*, & sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*. ch. 36

How King *Ferragus* assembled all his men of war to take revenge upon *Valentine* and his sister *Clerimond*; and how he followed them into *Aquitain*. chap. 37

The Table.

- How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken prisoner in the battel by *Ferragus*, & how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*. ch. 38
- How *Orson* tryed the constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he married her. ch. 39
- How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthened his forces by the aid of *K. Trompart* and the Enchanted *Adrimain*. ch. 40
- Of the pittifull tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son before his farewel to *Constantinople*. And what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Unkle. ch. 41
- How *Valentine* and the Green-Kt. were taken prisoners in the battel of *Constantinople*, by the *Souldan Moradin* & his men. c. 42
- How *Pacolet* by enchantment deliver'd *Valentine* & the Green Kt. out of the bondage of the Soldan, & how *Pacolet* couzened the Soldan when he had him upon his horse, & instead of carying him into *Portugal*, brought him into *Constantinople*, where he was hanged. ch. 43
- How *K. Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus* and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*. And how the K. of *Inde* caused *K. Trompart's* head to be struck off, & how he would have married with *Clerimond*, and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape of a woman. And how *Ferragus* was slain, & how *Orson* & the D. went with an army to *Constantinople*, to succor the Emperor, & how *Orson* led along with him his Mother. And how all the Pagans were slain before *Constantinople*, & how the Emperour received his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellysant* with joy. ch. 44
- How *K. Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, & how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainted, & left the knife in the bed, and accused *Orson* falsely of treason, & how the knife was found in the Kings bed. And how *Orson* claimed combat against his accusers, when they would have judged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, & in the end he slew the Dragon, & how *Valentine* after the conquest of the Dragon, caused the K. of *Antioch*, & all his land to be baptized, & of the lawless love of the Queen *Roxamond*. And how the K. of *Antioch*

The Table.

tiach was put to death for renouncing his *Mahometry*, by *Brandiffer* his wives father, & how the Emperor of *Greece*, and the *Green-Kt.* were taken prisoners by *Brandiffer*. ch. 45

How *Clerimond* after the year was past feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the K. of *Inde*. And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his father K. *Trompa-t*, upon the K. of *Inde*. And how K. *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy*, wedded *Rozamond* the fair daughter of *Brandiffer*, & how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breath out defiance, & of the answer he brought from the *Indian K.* And how *Rozamond* found a way to be taken, and led unto the *Indian K.* and how K. *Lucar* caught *Brandiffer* to stay with him, & sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against K. *Pepin*; and how K. *Pepin* took the City of *Angory*. ch. 46

How *Valentine* returned back to *India* after the battel, and bare with him the dead body of K. *Murgalant*, and how he heard tydings of his father, & how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian K.* and left *Brandiffer* in prison. And how K. *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses tails, & how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his hoast & went to *Angory*, & of the vision of K. *Pepin*, & how he went into the holy Land with the twelve Peers of *France*. And what happened. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their father K. *Pepin*, and the twelve Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas* made a truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*. And how *Haufray* to further his treason, came before *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, and how he was intrapped in his own net. ch. 47

How *Valentine* and *Pacolet* came before the Castle, & how *Pacolet* raised up the Devil, to ask his counsel about the taking of the Castle. And how *Brandiffer* brought the twelve Peers of *France* into his strong Castle, & imprisoned them. And how he besieged the City of *Angory*; and how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was captive in *Angory*, made means to *Valentine* to deliver him upon sufficient ransome. ch. 48

How *Myllon-Daugler* (who was taken for the K. of *France*) was delivered out of prison, instead of K. *Lucar*. And how *Valentine* and the Duke *Myllon* issued out of the City of *Angory*, and wan

The Table.

wan the battel from the Sarazens. And how King Pepin was delivered in change for the King of Indies Marshal; And left Angory, and returned into France to succour his Wife. *ch. 49*
How Valentine, under the shape of a Physitian, went into India to see and speak with the fair Clerimond. And how Valentine rode away with her. And how the K. of Brittain was given to K. Pepin by treason. And how Valentine took the strong Castle, & delivered his Father the Emperor, & all the rest of the prisoners. And how the Emperor, Orson, and the Green-Kt. kept a strong Garrison in this Castle, and how Haufray & Henry compassed the death of their father. And how the Emperor of Greece, Orson, and the Green-Knight, left the Castle, & came to the succour of Valentine in Angory. And how the Christians issued out of the City of Angory, & bid battel to the Sarazens. And how Valentine ignorantly slew his own father, & how Myllon Dangler returned into France, and Valentine and Orson into Greece. *ch. 50*

How Valentine took leave of Clerimond before his Pilgrimage, & how K. Hugon demanded Clerimond for his Wife, & how he betrayed Orson & the Green-Knight. And how Galeran delivered his letters to the Ladies, & of the grievous lamentations they made. How Bellysant & Clerimond came to know King Hugons treason, and how Galeran lost his head. And how Orson & the Green-Knight were set free. *ch. 51*

How at the end of seven years, Valentine died in the Palace of Constantinople, and how Orson turned Hermit. *ch. 52*

FINIS.

21317

A Catalogue of Books.

THe Famous History of, *The Destruction of Troy*, in three books: Shewing the Foundation of the City, and the first Destruction by *Hercules*; The Rebuilding & Second Destruction: The Re-Edificing by *Priamus* and *Laomedan*: The Ravishing of *Helen*: The Worthy actions of *Priamus* and *Hector*; And the Final Ruine of that Famous City.

The Delectable History of, *Paladine of England*.

The History of, *Amadis de Gaul*, the Fifth Part.

The Pleasant History of, *Donbellianis of Greece*.

The Excellent History of, *Cleocreton and Clorianna*.

The History of, *Montelion Knight of the Oracle*.

These with Variety of other

HISTORIES, which are Convenient for **ENGLISH**, or **IRISH** Chapmen, are Printed for, & sold by, **THO. PASSINGER**, at the three Bibles on *London-bridge*.

FINIS.

